Exhibit L: 700C User Manual

FCC ID: HN2SB555





700 Series Color Mobile Computer





700 Series Color Mobile Computer

• NOTICE The information contained herein is proprietary and is provided solely for the purpose of allowing customers to operate and service Intermec manufactured equipment and is not to be released, reproduced, or used for any other purpose without written permission of Intermec.

Disclaimer of Warranties. The sample source code included in this document is presented for reference only. The code does not necessarily represent complete, tested programs. The code is provided "AS IS WITH ALL FAULTS." ALL WARRANTIES ARE EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMED, INCLUDING THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

We welcome your comments concerning this publication. Although every effort has been made to keep it free of errors, some may occur. When reporting a specific problem, please describe it briefly and include the book title and part number, as well as the paragraph or figure number and the page number.

Send your comments to: Intermec Technologies Corporation Publications Department 550 Second Street SE Cedar Rapids, IA 52401

ANTARES, INTERMEC, NORAND, NOR*WARE, PEN*KEY, ROUTEPOWER, TRAKKER, and TRAKKER ANTARES are registered trademarks and ArciTech, ENTERPRISE WIRELESS LAN, i-gistics, INCA, Mobile Framework, MobileLAN, TE 2000, UAP, and UNIVERSAL ACCESS POINT are trademarks of Intermec Technologies Corporation.

© 2002 Intermec Technologies Corporation. All rights reserved.

Acknowledgments

ActiveSync, ActiveX, Microsoft, MS, MS-DOS, Outlook, Pocket Outlook, Pocket PC, Windows, Windows NT, and the Windows logo are registered trademarks and MSDN, SQL Server, Visual Basic, Visual C++, and Windows for Pen are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries. Microsoft products are licensed to OEMs by Microsoft Licensing, Inc., a wholly owned subsidiary of Microsoft Corporation.

Bluetooth is a trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc., U.S.A.

CDMA2000 is a trademark of the Telecommunications Industry Association (TIA).

GSM is a registered trademark of the GSM Association.

Microclean II is a registered trademark of Foresight International.

MultiMediaCard is a trademark of Infineon Technologies AG, Germany, and is licensed to MMCA (MultiMediaCard Association).

SanDisk is a trademark of SanDisk Corporation.

Siemens is a registered trademark of Siemens AG. Siemens product names are either trademarks or registered trademarks of Siemens or Siemens AG.

This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit. (http://www.openssl.org/)

This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com)

Contents

Before You Begi	n x	cv
C	Warranty Information x	v
	Safety Summary x	v
	Warnings, Cautions, and Notes xw	vi
	About This Manual xv	vi
	Format Conventions for Input From a Keyboard or Keypad xv	ii
	Related Publications xvi	ii
	Global Services and Support xvi	ii
	Web Support xvi	ii

Introduction

About the 700 Series Color Mobile Computer	2
Audio System	2
Speaker	
Internal Microphone	
External Headset Jack	2
Battery	2
Low Battery Shutdown	3
System Status Maintained	4
CAB Files Within 700C Software Tools CD	4
Modem Support	4
Network Support	4
Removeable Card Support	
CompactFlash Cards	
SecureDigital Cards	
MultiMediaCards	5
Software Build Version	5
What's New	6

Pocket PC 2002	2
Introduction	
Premium versus Profe	essional Editions
Where to Find Inform	nation
Basic Skills	
Butto	ons and Stylus
Toda	y Screen
Progr	rams
-	gation Bar and Command Bar14
	up Menus
-	fications
	r Information on Your 700 Series Computer
2.1.00	Typing With the Soft Keyboard
	Using Block Recognizer
	Using Letter Recognizer
	Using Transcriber 18
	Selecting Typed Text 18
Writi	ing on the Screen
	Selecting the Writing 19
	Converting Writing to Text 20
Draw	ving on the Screen
	Creating a Drawing 22
	Selecting a Drawing
Reco	rding a Message
	Creating a Recording 23
	g My Text
	ing and Organizing Information
Custo	omizing Your 700 Series Computer 26
	Adjusting Settings 26
	Adding or Removing Programs
Microsoft ActiveSync	
Microsoft Pocket Out	look
	ndar: Scheduling Appointments and Meetings
	Creating an Appointment
	Using the Summary Screen
	Creating Meeting Requests 33
	Scheduling a Meeting
Cont	racts: Tracking Friends and Colleagues
	Creating a Contact
	Finding a Contact
	Using the Summary Screen 36
Tasks	s: Keeping a To Do List
	Creating a Task
	Using the Summary Screen
Note	s: Capturing Thoughts and Ideas 40
	Creating a Note

Inbox: Sending a	and Receiving E-mail Messages	
	Synchronizing E-mail Messages	. 42
	Connecting Directly to an E-mail Server	. 42
	Using the Message List	. 43
	Composing Messages	
	Managing E-mail Messages and Folders	
	Folder Behavior With a Direct Connection to an E-mail Server	
C		47
Companion Programs		. 4/
Pocket Word		
	Creating a Document	. 47
	Typing Mode	. 49
	Writing Mode	
	Drawing Mode	. 51
	Recording Mode	
Pocket Excel		. 52
	Creating a Workbook	. 52
	Tips for Working in Pocket Excel	. 53
MSN Messenger		
8	Setting Up	
	Working with Contacts	·)4
	Chatting with Contacts	
Windows Media	Player for Pocket PC	
	,	
Microsoft Reade	r	
	Getting Books on Your 700 Series Computer	
	Using the Library	
	Reading a Book	
	Using Reader Features	. 61
	Removing a Book	. 61
Pocket Internet Explorer		62
The Mobile Fav	orites Folder	62
	S	
e	Channels	
Using Pocket In	ternet Explorer	. 65
C	Viewing Mobile Favorites and Channels	
	Browsing the Internet	. 66
	8	
		$(\neg$
	тт. т.С. 1	
Iransferring Iter	ns Using Infrared	
	Sending Information	. 67
	Receiving Information	. 67
Connecting to a	n Internet Service Provider	. 68
_	Creating a Modem Connection to an ISP	. 68
	Creating an Ethernet Connection to an ISP	
Connecting to W	Vork	
	Creating a Modem Connection to Work	
	Creating an Ethernet Connection to Work	
Ending a Corre	ection	
e	ectly to an E-mail Server	
Setting Up an E	-mail Service	. 73



Installing Applications

Packaging an Application
Installing Applications
Using Microsoft ActiveSync
Using the FTP Server
Using the Application Manager in Unit Manager
Using a Storage Card
Copying to a CompactFlash Card
Copying to a SecureDigital Storage Card
Updating the System Software
Application Migration
Cabinet File Installation



Network Support

CORE
Network Adapters
Ethernet Communications
802.11b Communications
Profiles
Import/Export
Scan List
Network Selection APIs
Function Summary 101
802.11b Radio CORE Module
WWAN Radio Options
GSM/GPRS
CDMA/1xRTT SB555
AT Command Interface
Wireless Printing
Documentation
Bluealps CORE Module
AutoIP/DHCP
SNMP Configuration
The Focus was "Simple" 123
Using SNMP
Retrieval of Management Information 124
An Early Approach to Getting More than One Item at a Time
Conclusion
SNMP Configuration on the 700 Series Computer
Management Information Base
Object Identifiers
Configuring with SNMP 120

5

Printing ASCII		128
0	Directly to a Port	128
	Directly to a Generic Serial Port	
IrDA Printer D	Priver	128
NPCP Printer	Driver	129
	About NPCP	
	NPCP Driver Installation and Removal	129
	Opening the NPCP Driver	130
	Closing the NPCP Driver	
	Reading from the NPCP Driver	
	Writing to the NPCP Driver	130
	NPCP Driver I/O Controls	
	NPCP Printer Communications	132
	Sample Code	132
	NPCP Error Codes	
O' Neil Printer	Driver	134
	DTR Driver Installation and Removal	
	Opening the DTR Driver	135
	Closing the DTR Driver	
	Writing to the DTR Driver	
	DTR Printer Communications	

6 Scanner Support

ner Control and Data Transfer	38
omatic Data Collection COM Interfaces	38
Multiple ADC COM Object Support 13	;9
How to Create and Use the ADC COM Interfaces	ί0
Read-Ahead Bar Code Data Access	í0
Grid Data Filtering 14	í1
Filter Expression Values 14	
Editing Expression Values	
ADC Connection 14	
2D Imager Overview	i6
Data Collection Features	í6
Image Acquisition Features	
Create and Delete ADC COM Object Functions	
ITCDeviceOpen	
ITCDeviceClose	

IADC Functions .		151
IA	DC::CancelReadRequest	152
	DC::Initialize	
	DC::QueryAttribute	
	DC::QueryData	
	DC::Read	
	DC::SetAttribute	
	ntrol Functions	
	arCodeReaderControl::CancelReadRequest	
	arCodeReaderControl::ControlLED	
	arCodeReaderControl::Initialize	
	arCodeReaderControl::IssueBeep	
	arCodeReaderControl::QueryAttribute	
	arCodeReaderControl::Read	
	arCodeReaderControl::SetAttribute	
	arCodeReaderControl::TriggerScanner	
	ons	
	OCConfig::GetCodabar	
	OCConfig::SetCodabar	
Co	dabar Default Settings	1/5
	dabar Enumerations	
	OCConfig::GetCode39	
	OCConfig::SetCode39	
	de 39 Default Settings	
	de 39 Enumerations	
	OCConfig::GetCode93	
	OCConfig::SetCode93	
	de 93 Default Settings	
	de 93 Enumerations	
	OCConfig::GetCode128	
	OCConfig::SetCode128	
Co	de 128/EAN 128 Default Settings	181
Co	de 128 Enumerations	182
ISS	OCConfig::GetI2of5	183
ISS	OCConfig::SetI2of5	184
Int	cerleaved 2 of 5 Default Settings	184
	erleaved 2 of 5 Enumerations	
ISS	OCConfig::GetMatrix2of5	185
ISS	OCConfig::SetMatrix2of5	186
Ma	atrix 2 of 5 Default Settings	186
Ma	atrix 2 of 5 Enumerations	186
ISS	OCConfig::GetMSI	187
	OCConfig::SetMSI	
	SI Default Settings	
	SI Enumerations	
	OCConfig::GetPDF417	
	OCConfig::SetPDF417	
	OF 417 Default Settings	
	OF 417 Enumerations	
	OCConfig::GetPlessey	
	OCConfig::SetPlessey	
	essey Default Settings	
	essey Enumerations	
	OCConfig::GetStandard2of5	
	OCConfig::SetStandard2of5	
13)		エノノ

Standard 2 of 5 Enumerations196ISPCConfig::GetTelepen197Telepen Default Settings197Telepen Enumerations198ISPCConfig::GetUpeEan200UPC/EAN Default Settings201UPC/EAN Default Settings201UPC/EAN Default Settings201ISPCConfig:SetUpeEan206UPC/EAN Default Settings201UPC/EAN Enumerations204ISPCConfig2:SetCodel 1205Code 11 Enumerations206Code 11 Default Settings206Code 11 Default Settings206Code 11 Default Settings206Code 11 Enumerations206Code 11 Default Settings207IS9CConfig2:SetCodel 1208Custom Identifier Assignments209Custom Identifier Edault Settings210Custom Identifier Edault Settings210Custom Identifier Edault Settings210SetConfig2::SetGlobalAmble211IS9CConfig2::SetGlobalAmble212Postamble and Preamble Defaults213IS9CConfig2::SetSymIdXmit214IS9CConfig2:SetSymIdXmit214IS9CConfig2:SetSymIdXmit214IS9CConfig2:SetSymIdXmit214IS9CConfig2:SetSymIdXmit214IS9CConfig2:SetSymIdXmit214IS9CConfig2:SetSymIdXmit214IS9CConfig2:SetSymIdXmit214IS9CConfig2:SetSymIdXmit214IS9CConfig2:SetSymIdXmit214IS9CConfig2:SetSymIdXmit214IS9CConfig2:			Standard 2 of 5 Default Settings	196
IS9CConfig::SetTelepen 197 Telepen Default Settings 197 Telepen Enumerations 198 IS9CConfig::GetUpEan 200 UPC/EAN Default Settings 201 UPC/EAN Default Settings 201 UPC/EAN Enumerations 204 IS9CConfig2:GetCode11 205 Code 11 Default Settings 206 Code 11 Enumerations 206 Code 11 Default Settings 207 IS9CConfig2::GetCustomSymIds 208 Custom Identifier Assignments 209 Custom Identifier Example 210 US9CConfig2::GetObalAmble 212 Postamble and Preamble Defaults 212 IS9CConfig2::GetOpF417Ext 213 IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit 214				
Telepen Default Settings 197 Telepen Enumerations 198 IS9CConfig::GetUpEan 198 IS9CConfig::SetUpEan 200 UPC/EAN Default Settings 201 UPC/EAN Default Settings 201 UPC/EAN Default Settings 201 UPC/EAN Default Settings 201 IS9CConfig2:Functions 204 IS9CConfig2:SetCode11 205 Code 11 Default Settings 206 Code 11 Enumerations 206 Custom Identifier Assignments 209 Custom Identifier Default Settings 210 Custom Identifier CobalAmble 211 IS9CConfig2::GetGlobalAmble 212 Postamble and Preamble Defaults 212 Postamble and Preamble Defaults 212 Postamble and Preamble Defaults 213 IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig3: InsetSymIdXmit 214 </td <td></td> <td></td> <td>IS9CConfig::GetTelepen</td> <td>197</td>			IS9CConfig::GetTelepen	197
Telepen Enumerations 198 IS9CConfig::GetUpeEan 198 IS9CConfig::GetUpeEan 200 UPC/EAN Default Settings 201 UPC/EAN Enumerations 201 IS9CConfig2:GetCodel1 205 IS9CConfig2:GetCode11 205 Code 11 Default Settings 206 Code 11 Default Settings 207 IS9CConfig2::SetCustomSymlds 208 Custom Identifier Default Settings 210 Custom Identifier Default Settings 210 IS9CConfig2::GetGlobalAmble 212 Postamble and Preamble Defaults 212 IS9CConfig2::GetSprIdAtint 213 PDF 417 Extended: Micro PDF 417 Default Settings 214 IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit 214 Symbology ID Transmissi			IS9CConfig::SetTelepen	197
IS9ČConfig::GetUpEan 198 IS9CConfig::SetUpEan 200 UPC/EAN Default Settings 201 UPC/EAN Enumerations 201 IS9CConfig2:Functions 204 IS9CConfig2:GetCode11 205 Soconfig2:SetCode11 205 Code 11 Default Settings 206 Costomfig2:GetCustomSymIds 207 IS9CConfig2:GetCustomSymIds 207 IS9CConfig2:GetCustomSymIds 209 Custom Identifier Assignments 209 Custom Identifier Assignments 209 Custom Identifier Example 210 Config2:GetGobalAmble 211 IS9CConfig2::GetDF417Ext 213 IS9CConfig2::GetDF417Ext 213 IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig3 Functions 216			Telepen Default Settings	197
IS9CConfig:SetUpcEan 200 UPC/EAN Default Settings 201 UPC/EAN Enumerations 201 IS9CConfig2:Functions 204 IS9CConfig2:SetCode11 205 Code 11 Default Settings 206 Code 11 Default Settings 206 Code 11 Default Settings 206 Code 11 Enumerations 206 Code 11 Default Settings 206 Code 11 Enumerations 206 Code 11 Enumerations 206 Code 11 Enumerations 206 Code 11 Enumerations 207 IS9CConfig2:SetClostomSymIds 207 IS9CConfig2:SetConfig2:SetClobalAmble 201 Custom Identifier Example 210 IS9CConfig2:SetClobalAmble 212 Postamble and Preamble Defaults 212 IS9CConfig2:GetPDF417Ext 213 IS9CConfig2:GetSetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2:GetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2:GetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig3 Functions 215 IS9CConfig3 Functions 216 IS9CConfig3 Functions 216			Telepen Enumerations	198
UPC/EAN Default Settings 201 UPC/EAN Enumerations 201 UPC/EAN Enumerations 201 IS9CConfig2 Functions 204 IS9CConfig2:GetCode11 205 IS9CConfig2:SetCode11 205 Code 11 Default Settings 206 Code 11 Default Settings 206 Code 11 Default Settings 206 Custom Identifier Assignments 209 Custom Identifier Example 210 Custom Identifier Example 210 Custom Identifier Example 210 Custom Identifier Example 210 SpCConfig2::GetGlobalAmble 212 IS9CConfig2::GetGlobalAmble 212 IS9CConfig2::GetPDF417Ext 213 IS9CConfig2::GetPDF417Ext 213 IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit 216 <td></td> <td></td> <td>IS9CConfig::GetUpcEan</td> <td>198</td>			IS9CConfig::GetUpcEan	198
UPC/EAN Enumerations 201 IS9CConfig2 Functions 204 IS9CConfig2:SetCode11 205 IS9CConfig2:SetCode11 205 Code 11 Default Settings 206 Code 11 Enumerations 206 IS9CConfig2:SetCustomSymIds 207 IS9CConfig2:SetCustomSymIds 208 Custom Identifier Default Settings 209 Custom Identifier Default Settings 210 Custom Identifier Default Settings 210 Custom Identifier Default Settings 211 SetConfig2::GetGlobalAmble 211 IS9CConfig2::SetClobalAmble 212 Postamble and Preamble Defaults 212 IS9CConfig2::SetDF417Ext 213 PDF 417 Extended: Micro PDF 417 Default Settings 214 IS9CConfig2::SetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2::SetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2:SetConfig 215 IS9CConfig2:SetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2:SetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2:SetConfig 217 IS9CConfig2:SetConfig 217 <				
IS9CConfig2 Functions 204 IS9CConfig2::SetCodel1 205 Code 11 Default Settings 206 Code 11 Enumerations 206 Costor Identifier Asignments 209 Custom Identifier Example 210 Custom Identifier Example 210 IS9CConfig2::GetGlobalAmble 212 Postamble and Preamble Defaults 212 IS9CConfig2::GetPDF417Ext 213 IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2::GetConfig 217 IS9CConfig2::GetConfig 216 ISPCP::GetConf				
IS9CConfig2::GetCode11 205 IS9CConfig2::SetCode11 205 Code 11 Default Settings 206 Code 11 Enumerations 206 IS9CConfig2::SetCustomSymIds 207 IS9CConfig2::SetCustomSymIds 208 Custom Identifier Assignments 209 Custom Identifier Default Settings 210 UspCConfig2::SetGlobalAmble 211 IS9CConfig2::GetGlobalAmble 212 Postamble and Preamble Defaults 212 Postamble and Preamble Defaults 213 IS9CConfig2::GetPDF417Ext 213 IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2:SetSymIdXmit 214 ISPC:SetConfig 216 ISCP:SetConfig			UPC/EAN Enumerations	201
IS9CConfig2::SetCode11 205 Code 11 Default Settings 206 Code 11 Default Settings 206 Code 11 Enumerations 206 IS9CConfig2::GetCustomSymIds 207 IS9CConfig2::GetCustomSymIds 208 Custom Identifier Assignments 209 Custom Identifier Default Settings 210 IS9CConfig2::GetGlobalAmble 211 IS9CConfig2::GetGlobalAmble 212 Postamble and Preamble Defaults 212 IS9CConfig2::GetPDF417Ext 213 IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2::SetConfig 215 IS9CConfig2::SetConfig 216 ISCP Commands 216 ISCP:Config 217 ISCP:SetConfig 217 ISCP:SetConfig 217 ISCP:SetConfig 217 ISCP:SetConfig 216 ISCP:SetConfig 217 ISCP:SetConfig 217 ISCP:SetConfig 218		IS9CConfig2 F	unctions	204
Code 11 Default Settings 206 Code 11 Enumerations 206 IS9CConfig2::GetCustomSymIds 207 IS9CConfig2::SetCustomSymIds 208 Custom Identifier Assignments 209 Custom Identifier Default Settings 210 Custom Identifier Example 210 IS9CConfig2::GetGlobalAmble 211 IS9CConfig2::GetGlobalAmble 212 Postamble and Preamble Defaults 212 Postamble and Preamble Defaults 213 IS9CConfig2::GetPDF417Ext 213 IS9CConfig2::GetPDF417Ext 213 PDF 417 Extended: Micro PDF 417 Default Settings 214 IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2:SetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2:SetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2:SetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2:SetSymIdXmit 216 ISCP::GetConfig 217 ISCP::GetConfig 217 ISCP::GetConfig 217 ISCP::SetConfig 218 AIM Symbology ID Defaults 219 IImage::ReadSigCapBuffe			IS9CConfig2::GetCode11	205
Code 11 Enumerations 206 IS9CConfig2::GetCustomSymIds 207 IS9CConfig2::SetCustomSymIds 208 Custom Identifier Assignments 209 Custom Identifier Default Settings 210 Custom Identifier Example 210 Custom Identifier Example 210 Custom Identifier Example 211 IS9CConfig2::GetGlobalAmble 211 IS9CConfig2::GetDefal7Ext 213 IS9CConfig2::GetPDF417Ext 213 IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2::GetConfig 216 ISCP Commands 216 ISCP: GetConfig 217 ISCP: GetConfig 218 AIM Symbology ID Defaults 219 IImage::ReadSigCapBuffer 221 Image::ReadSigCapFile 224			IS9CConfig2::SetCode11	205
IS9CConfig2::GetCustomSymIds 207 IS9CConfig2::GetCustomSymIds 208 Custom Identifier Assignments 209 Custom Identifier Default Settings 210 Custom Identifier Example 210 Custom Identifier Example 210 IS9CConfig2::GetGlobalAmble 211 IS9CConfig2::GetGlobalAmble 212 Postamble and Preamble Defaults 212 Postamble and Preamble Defaults 213 IS9CConfig2::GetPDF417Ext 213 IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit 214 Symbology ID Transmission Option 215 IS9CConfig3 Functions 216 ISCP::GetConfig 217 ISCP::SetConfig 218 AIM Symbology ID Defaults 219 IImage: Interface 221 IImage::ReadSigCapBuffer 221 IImage::ReadSigCapFile 224 IImage::ReadSigCapFile 226 IImage::Cose 227 Image::Close 227 Image::Close 228 <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td>				
IS9CConfig2::SetCustomSymIds 208 Custom Identifier Assignments 209 Custom Identifier Default Settings 210 Custom Identifier Example 210 IS9CConfig2::GetGlobalAmble 211 IS9CConfig2::SetGlobalAmble 212 Postamble and Preamble Defaults 212 IS9CConfig2::SetFDF417Ext 213 IS9CConfig2::SetPDF417Ext 213 IS9CConfig2::SetPDF417Ext 213 PDF 417 Extended: Micro PDF 417 Default Settings 214 IS9CConfig2::SetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig2::SetSymIdXmit 214 IS9CConfig3 Functions 216 ISCP:SetConfig 217 ISPCConfig3 216 ISCP:GetSymIdXmit 218 AIM Symbology ID Defaults 219 IImage:Interface 221 IImage::ReadSigCapBuffer 221 IImage::ReadSigCapFile 224 IImage::CancelReadImage 225 IImage::Close 226 IImage::Close 227 IImage::Close 228			Code 11 Enumerations	206
Custom Identifier Assignments209Custom Identifier Assignments210Custom Identifier Example210Custom Identifier Example210IS9CConfig2::GetGlobalAmble211IS9CConfig2::GetPDF417Ext213Postamble and Preamble Defaults212IS9CConfig2::GetPDF417Ext213PDF 417 Extended: Micro PDF 417 Default Settings214IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit214IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit214IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit214IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit214IS9CConfig2::SetSymIdXmit214IS9CConfig3 Functions216ISCP::GetConfig217ISCP::GetConfig217ISCP::SetConfig218AIM Symbology ID Defaults219IImage:Interface221IImage::ReadSigCapBuffer221IImage::ReadSigCapFile224IImage::ReadImage225IImage::Start226IImage::Open227IImage::Close227IImage::Close227			IS9CConfig2::GetCustomSymIds	207
Custom Identifier Default Settings210Custom Identifier Example210IS9CConfig2::GetGlobalAmble211IS9CConfig2::GetGlobalAmble212Postamble and Preamble Defaults212IS9CConfig2::GetPDF417Ext213IS9CConfig2::GetPDF417Ext213PDF 417 Extended: Micro PDF 417 Default Settings214IS9CConfig2::SetPDF417Ext213PDF 417 Extended: Micro PDF 417 Default Settings214IS9CConfig2::SetSymIdXmit214IS9CConfig2::SetSymIdXmit216IS9CConfig3 Functions216IS2P Comfig217IS9CConfig217ISCP::GetConfig218AIM Symbology ID Defaults219IImage Interface221IImage::ReadSigCapBuffer221IImage::ReadSigCapFile224IImage::CancelReadImage226IImage::Start226IImage::Close227IImage::Close228				
Custom Identifier Example210IS9CConfig2::GetGlobalAmble211IS9CConfig2::SetGlobalAmble212Postamble and Preamble Defaults212IS9CConfig2::GetPDF417Ext213IS9CConfig2::SetPDF417Ext213PDF 417 Extended: Micro PDF 417 Default Settings214IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit214IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit214IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit214IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit214IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit216IS9CConfig3 Functions216ISCP: Commands216ISCP: GetConfig217ISCP::SetConfig218AIM Symbology ID Defaults219IImage Interface221IImage::ReadSigCapBuffer221IImage::ReadSigCapFile224IImage::ReadSigCapFile226IImage::Stop227IImage::Open227IImage::Close227IImage::Close228				
IS9CConfig2::GetGlobalAmble211IS9CConfig2::SetGlobalAmble212Postamble and Preamble Defaults212IS9CConfig2::GetPDF417Ext213IS9CConfig2::SetPDF417Ext213PDF 417 Extended: Micro PDF 417 Default Settings214IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit214IS9CConfig2::SetSymIdXmit214Symbology ID Transmission Option215IS9CConfig3 Functions216ISCP:GetConfig217ISCP::GetConfig218AIM Symbology ID Defaults219IImage:Interface221IImage:ReadSigCapBuffer224IImage::ReadSigCapFile225IImage::ReadSigCapFile226IImage::Start226IImage::Start226IImage::Close227IImage::Close228				
IS9CConfig2::SetGlobalAmble212Postamble and Preamble Defaults212IS9CConfig2::GetPDF417Ext213IS9CConfig2::GetPDF417Ext213PDF 417 Extended: Micro PDF 417 Default Settings214IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit214IS9CConfig2::SetSymIdXmit214Symbology ID Transmission Option215IS9CConfig3 Functions216ISCP:GetConfig217ISCP::GetConfig217ISCP::SetConfig218AIM Symbology ID Defaults219IImage: Interface221IImage::ReadSigCapBuffer224IImage::ReadSigCapFile225IImage::CancelReadImage226IImage::Start226IImage::Open227IImage::Open227IImage::Open227IImage::Close228				
Postamble and Preamble Defaults212IS9CConfig2::GetPDF417Ext213IS9CConfig2::SetPDF417Ext213PDF 417 Extended: Micro PDF 417 Default Settings214IS9CConfig2::SetSymIdXmit214IS9CConfig2::SetSymIdXmit214Symbology ID Transmission Option215IS9CConfig3 Functions216ISCP Commands216ISCP::GetConfig217ISCP::GetConfig217ISCP::SetConfig218AIM Symbology ID Defaults219IImage Interface221IImage::ReadSigCapBuffer222IImage::ReadSigCapFile225IImage::CancelReadImage226IImage::Start226IImage::Start227IImage::Open227IImage::Close228				
IS9CConfig2::GetPDF417Ext213IS9CConfig2::SetPDF417Ext213PDF 417 Extended: Micro PDF 417 Default Settings214IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit214IS9CConfig2::SetSymIdXmit214IS9CConfig2::SetSymIdXmit214Symbology ID Transmission Option215IS9CConfig3 Functions216ISCP Commands216ISCP::GetConfig217ISCP::GetConfig218AIM Symbology ID Defaults219IImage Interface221IImage::ReadSigCapBuffer224IImage::ReadSigCapFile225IImage::CancelReadImage226IImage::Start226IImage::Stop227IImage::Close228				
IS9CConfig2::SetPDF417Ext213PDF 417 Extended: Micro PDF 417 Default Settings214IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit214IS9CConfig2::SetSymIdXmit214Symbology ID Transmission Option215IS9CConfig3 Functions216ISCP::GetConfig217ISCP::GetConfig217ISCP::GetConfig218AIM Symbology ID Defaults219IImage Interface221IImage::ReadSigCapBuffer224IImage::ReadSigCapFile225IImage::CancelReadImage226IImage::Stop227IImage::Open227IImage::Close228				
PDF 417 Extended: Micro PDF 417 Default Settings				
IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit214IS9CConfig2::SetSymIdXmit214Symbology ID Transmission Option215IS9CConfig3 Functions216ISCP Commands216ISCP::GetConfig217ISCP::SetConfig218AIM Symbology ID Defaults219IImage Interface221IImage::ReadSigCapBuffer221IImage::ReadSigCapFile224IImage::ReadSigCapFile225IImage::CancelReadImage226IImage::Stop227IImage::Close227IImage::Close228				
IS9CConfig2::SetSymIdXmit				
Symbology ID Transmission Option215IS9CConfig3 Functions216ISCP Commands216ISCP::GetConfig217ISCP::SetConfig218AIM Symbology ID Defaults219IImage Interface221IImage::ReadSigCapBuffer221IImage::ReadSigCapFile224IImage::ReadImage225IImage::CancelReadImage226IImage::Start226IImage::Stop227IImage::Open227IImage::Close228				
IS9CConfig3 Functions216ISCP Commands216ISCP::GetConfig217ISCP::SetConfig218AIM Symbology ID Defaults219IImage Interface221IImage::ReadSigCapBuffer221IImage::ReadSigCapFile224IImage::ReadImage225IImage::CancelReadImage226IImage::Start226IImage::Stop227IImage::Open227IImage::Close228				
ISCP Commands216ISCP::GetConfig217ISCP::SetConfig218AIM Symbology ID Defaults219IImage Interface221IImage::ReadSigCapBuffer221IImage::ReadSigCapFile224IImage::ReadImage225IImage::CancelReadImage226IImage::Start226IImage::Stop227IImage::Open227IImage::Close228				
ISCP::GetConfig217ISCP::SetConfig218AIM Symbology ID Defaults219IImage Interface221IImage::ReadSigCapBuffer221IImage::ReadSigCapFile224IImage::ReadImage225IImage::CancelReadImage226IImage::Start226IImage::Stop227IImage::Open227IImage::Open227IImage::Close228		189CConfig3 F		
ISCP::SetConfig218AIM Symbology ID Defaults219IImage Interface221IImage::ReadSigCapBuffer221IImage::ReadSigCapFile224IImage::ReadImage225IImage::CancelReadImage226IImage::Start226IImage::Stop227IImage::Open227IImage::Close228				
AIM Symbology ID Defaults219IImage Interface221IImage::ReadSigCapBuffer221IImage::ReadSigCapFile224IImage::ReadImage225IImage::CancelReadImage226IImage::Start226IImage::Stop227IImage::Open227IImage::Close228				
IImage Interface221IImage::ReadSigCapBuffer221IImage::ReadSigCapFile224IImage::ReadImage225IImage::CancelReadImage226IImage::Start226IImage::Stop227IImage::Open227IImage::Open227IImage::Close228		17760 1 1		
IImage::ReadSigCapBuffer221IImage::ReadSigCapFile224IImage::ReadImage225IImage::CancelReadImage226IImage::Start226IImage::Stop227IImage::Open227IImage::Close228		AIM Symbolog	y ID Defaults	219
IImage::ReadSigCapBuffer221IImage::ReadSigCapFile224IImage::ReadImage225IImage::CancelReadImage226IImage::Start226IImage::Stop227IImage::Open227IImage::Close228	TT T C			
IImage::ReadSigCapFile224IImage::ReadImage225IImage::CancelReadImage226IImage::Start226IImage::Stop227IImage::Open227IImage::Open227IImage::Close228	Ilmage Interface	e	·····	221
IImage::ReadImage225IImage::CancelReadImage226IImage::Start226IImage::Stop227IImage::Open227IImage::Close228				
IImage::CancelReadImage226IImage::Start226IImage::Stop227IImage::Open227IImage::Close228		0		
IImage::Start 226 IImage::Stop 227 IImage::Open 227 IImage::Close 228		IImage::ReadIm	nage	225
IImage::Stop 227 IImage::Open 227 IImage::Close 228		IImage::Cancell	ReadImage	226
IImage::Stop 227 IImage::Open 227 IImage::Close 228		IImage::Start .		226
IImage::Open				
IImage::Close		•		
		0 1		
Data Collection Configuration				0
	Data Collection	Configuration .		229

ethered Scanner	230
Enabling and Disabling 2	230
Changing Comm Settings 2	231
Tethered Scanner	231
Sabre 1551E or 1553 Tethered Scanner	232
Welch Allyn 1470 Imager Settings	232
Error Message	232
Scanner Cabling	232
Limitations and Capabilities	233

7 Programming

Creating CAB Files	236
	eating Device-Specific CAB Files
	Creating an .INF File 236
	Sample .INF File
Us	ing Installation Functions in SETUP.DLL
Aft	ter the CAB File Extraction
Cr	eating CAB Files with CAB Wizard 249
Tro	publeshooting the CAB Wizard 250
FTP Server	
Co	onfigurable Parameters Via the Registry Editor
	BlockSize
	DeviceName
	DeviceURL
	IDNATarget
	ManifestName
	PauseAtStartup
Tra	ansferring Files Over TCP/IP Networks
	opping the FTP Server from Your Application
	stostart FTP
Full Screen	
Kernel I/O Control	s
IO	CTL_HAL_GET_DEVICE_INFO
IO	CTL_HAL_ITC_READ_PARM
IO	CTL_HAL_ITC_WRITE_SYSPARM
IO	CTL_HAL_GET_DEVICEID
IO	CTL_HAL_GET_OAL_VERINFO
IO	CTL_HAL_GET_BOOTLOADER_VERINFO
IO	CTL_HAL_WARMBOOT
IO	CTL_HAL_COLDBOOT
IO	CTL_HAL_GET_RESET_INFO
	CTL_HAL_GET_BOOT_DEVICE
	CTL_HAL_REBOOT
	CTL_PROCESSOR_INFORMATION
	CTL_GET_CPU_ID

oot Functions	280
IOCTL_HAL_REBOOT	280
IOCTL_HAL_COLDBOOT	280
IOCTL_HAL_WARMBOOT	280
napping the Keypad	281
Unshifted Plane	281
Gold Plane	281
Alpha Plane	281
Key Values	282
How Key Values Are Stored in Registry	282
Change Notification	283
Advanced Keypad Remapping	283
Scan Codes	283
Sample View of Registry Keys	284

A Control Panel Applets

Configuration	Parameters		286
C C	Changing a Par	ameter Setting	286
	About Configur	ration Parameters	287
	-		
Data Collection	n Control Panel A		288
	Symbologies		289
		Code 39	290
		Standard 2 of 5	291
		Codabar	292
		UPC/EAN	293
		Code 93	294
		Code 128	295
		Plessey	298
		MSI	299
		PDF 417	300
		Interleaved 2 of 5	303
		Matrix 2 of 5	304
		Telepen	305
		Code 11	306
		QR Code	307
		Data Matrix	308
	Symbology Opt	ions	309
		Symbology ID	309
		Prefix	
		Suffix	316
	Beeper/LED		317
		Beeper Volume	318
		Beeper Frequency	
		Good Read Beeps	
		Good Read Beep Duration	322
	Imager	*	
	-	Aimer LED duration	323
		Image Dimension	
		÷	

Virtual Wedge		325
C	Virtual Wedge	
	Preamble	
	Postamble	327
	Grid	328
	Code Page	329
SNMP Control Panel Applet .		330
Security		331
	Read Only Community	331
	Read/Write Community	
	Read Encryption	
	Write Encryption	
	Encryption Key	335
Traps		336
	Authentication	
	Threshold	
Identification		338
	Contact	338
	Name	339
	Location	340
Unit Information Control Pane	l Applet	341
Versions	•••	342
Battery Status		343



B Unit Manager

Data Collection		í8
	Symbologies	
	Symbology ID	
	Beeper/LED	
	Imager	
	Virtual Wedge	»O
SNMP		50
011111	Security	
	Traps	
	Identification	
)1
Unit		52
	Date/Time	
	Backlight Timeout	53
	Key Clicks	
	Automatic Shutoff	
	Volume	96
Using Reader C	ommands	57
	Change Configuration	
	Set Time and Date	
		0

Bar Codes

Bar Code Symbo	ologies	 360
	UPC	 362
	EAN	 362
	Codabar	
	Code 11	 363
	Code 39	 363
	Encoded Code 39 (Concatenation)	 363
	Encoded Code 39 (Full ASCII)	 363
	Code 93	 364
	Code 128	 364
	I 2 of 5 (Interleaved)	 366
	S 2 of 5 (Standard 2 of 5)	 366
	Plessey	 367
	MSI Code (Variant of Plessey)	
Bar Code Labels		 368
	Audio Volume	
	Automatic Shutoff	 369
	Backlight Timeout	
	Key Clicks	
	Virtual Wedge Grid, Preamble, Postamble	
	Grid	
	Preamble	
	Postamble	

Index

Classes and Functions	374
General Index	377
Files Index	398

Contents

Before You Begin

This section introduces you to standard warranty provisions, safety precautions, warnings and cautions, document formatting conventions, and sources of additional product information. A documentation roadmap is also provided to guide you in finding the appropriate information.

Warranty Information

To receive a copy of the standard warranty provision for this product, contact your local Intermec support services organization. In the U.S. call 1-800-755-5505, and in Canada call 1-800-668-7043. If you live outside of the U.S. or Canada, you can find your local Intermec support services organization on the Intermec Web site at <u>www.intermec.com</u>.



Note: Opening this product may void the warranty. The internal workings of this product can only be accessed by Intermec service personnel. Radio replacements and upgrades require Intermec service personnel.

Safety Summary

Your safety is extremely important. Follow these guidelines:

- Read and follow all warnings and cautions in this book before handling and operating Intermec equipment. You can be seriously injured, and equipment and data can be damaged if you do no follow the safety warnings and cautions.
- Do not repair or adjust energized equipment alone under any circumstances. Someone capable of providing first aid must always be present for your safety.
- Always obtain first aid or medical attention immediately after an injury. Never neglect an injury, no matter how slight it seems.
- Begin resuscitation immediately if someone is injured and stops breathing. Any delay could result in death. To work on or near high voltage, you should be familiar with approved industrial first aid methods.
- Never work on energized equipment unless authorized by a responsible authority. Energized electrical equipment is dangerous. Electrical shock from energized equipment can cause death. If you must perform authorized emergency work on energized equipment, be sure that you comply strictly with approved safety regulations.

Warnings, Cautions, and Notes



The warnings, cautions, and notes in this manual use this format:

A warning alerts you of an operating procedure, practice, condition, or statement that must be strictly observed to avoid death or serious injury to the persons working on the equipment.

Attention Danger: Un avertissement vous avertit d'une procédure de fonctionnement, d'une méthode, d'un état ou d'un rapport qui doit être strictement respecté pour éviter l'occurrence de mort ou de blessures graves aux personnes manupulant l'équipement.



A caution alerts you to an operating procedure, practice, condition, or statement that must be strictly observed to prevent equipment damage or destruction, or corruption or loss of data.

Attention: Une précaution vous avertit d'une procédure de fonctionnement, d'une méthode, d'un état ou d'un rapport qui doit être strictement respecté pour empêcher l'endommagement ou la destruction de l'équipement, ou l'altération ou la perte de données.



Note: Notes are statements that either provide extra information about a topic or contain special instructions for handling a particular condition or set of circumstances.

About This Manual

The 700 Series Color Mobile Computer User's Manual provides you with information about the features of the 700 Series Color Mobile Computer and how to configure, troubleshoot, and support it. You must be familiar with your host PC, your network, and your other Intermec equipment.

- Chapter 1 Introduction Introduces the 700 Series Color Mobile Computer.
- Chapter 2 Pocket PC 2002 Introduces the Pocket PC 2002 operating system from Microsoft Corporation, and explains how to use its Outlook, ActiveSync, Internet Explorer, and other companion programs.
- Chapter 3 Installing Applications Provides methods to install applications and CAB files, also covers application migration.
- Chapter 4 Network Support Introduces the CORE application, network adapters such as Ethernet, 802.11b radios, GSM/GPRS or CDMA/1xRTT embedded radio modules, and wireless printing equipped with a Bluetooth module, SNMP configuration, and Network Selection APIs.
- Chapter 5 Printer Support Provides information on printing ASCII to either a port or to a generic serial port, and on working with IrDA, NPCP, and O' Neil printer drivers.

- Chapter 6 Scanner Support Provides Automatic Data Collection COM and IImage interfaces and lists settings via Data Collection parameters.
- Chapter 7 Programming Programming information that includes creating CAB files, the FTP Server, Full Screen, Kernel I/O Control Functions, Reboot Functions, and remapping the keypad.
- Appendix A Control Panel Applets Contains detailed information about the Data Collection, SNMP, and Unit Information control panel applets.
- Appendix B Unit Manager Describes how to configure some parameters via the Unit Manager application and includes reader commands.
- Appendix C Bar Codes

Describes some of the more common bar code symbologies and includes bar code labels that can be scanned to configure your 700 Series Computer.

Format Conventions for Input From a Keyboard or Keypad

This table describes the formatting conventions for input from PC or host computer keyboards and device keypads.

Convention	Description
Special text	Shows the command as you should enter it into the device.
Italic text	Indicates a variable that you must replace the parameter with a value.
Bold text	Indicates the keys you must press on a PC or host computer key- board. For example, "press Enter " means you press the key labeled "Enter" on the PC or host computer keyboard.
where	This word introduces a list of parameters and explains the values you can specify for them.

Format Conventions

Related Publications

To order printed versions of the Intermec manuals, contact your local Intermec representative or distributor. Following are related Intermec manuals, CD-ROMs, and part numbers (P/N). For other versions and languages, consult your Intermec sales representative.

- 700 Series Color Mobile Computer Quick Start Guide (P/N: 962-054-053)
- 700 Color Recovery CD PPC 2002 Professional Edition WWE (P/N: 235-100-001 Kit)
- 700 Color Recovery CD PPC 2002 Premium Edition WWE (P/N: 235-101-001 Kit)
- 700 Series Color Software Tools CD (P/N: 235-099-001)
- Windows 95 and Windows CE Configuration Utilities Reference Manual (P/N: 978-054-010)

Global Services and Support

Select any of the following services available from Intermec Technologies Corporation:

- Factory Repair and On-site Repair To request a return authorization number for one of our authorized service centers, or to request an on-site repair technician, call 1-800-755-5505, then select option 1.
- Technical Support For technical support on your Intermec product, call 1-800-755-5505, then select option 2.
- Service Contract Status To inquire about an existing contract, or to renew a contract, call 1-800-755-5505, then select option 3.
- Schedule Site Surveys or Installations To schedule a site survey, or to request a product or system installation, call 1-800-755-5505, then select option 4.

Web Support

Visit our Web site at *http://www.intermec.com* to download many of our current manuals in PDF format.

Visit our technical knowledge base (Knowledge Central) at *http://intermec.custhelp.com* to review technical information or to request technical help for all Intermec products.



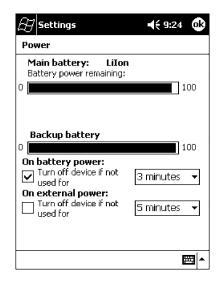
This chapter introduces the 700 Series Color (700C) Mobile Computer, developed by Intermec Technologies Corporation to enhance wireless connectivity needs.

About the 700 Series Color Mobile Computer

Battery



The 700 Series Computer comes equipped with a nominal 14.4 Watt-hour, 7.2V (two 2000 mAh cells), replaceable Lithium-Ion (LiIon) battery. To view the status of this battery from the 700 Series Computer, tap **Start** \rightarrow **Settings** \rightarrow the **System** tab \rightarrow the **Power** icon to view the current status of both the main battery and the backup battery. Tap **ok** to exit this information.





Note: The Unit Information control panel applet is only available in the 700 Series Computer if Intermec Content is enabled, the Plus region is enabled and installed, and a laser scanner is installed.

Unit Information You can also view the battery status for the 700 Series Computer by accessing the **Unit Information** control panel applet. Tap the **Unit Information** icon, then tap the **Battery Status** tab to view the current status. Tap **ok** to exit this information.

🔠 Settings	4 € 9:05 🐽
Unit Information	
Main battery, <charging></charging>	
Defaults Refresh	Apply
Versions CAB Files Battery St	atus
	 ►

Low Battery Shutdown

If your computer shuts down because of low battery conditions, your computer will not operate. This is done to ensure that data is protected. Although the battery will protect the data against loss for several hours, you should connect your computer to a power source when you first detect a low battery condition.

Your computer contains an internal super capacitor, a temporary power storage device, that protects data for up to ten minutes. This is to give you time to replace the main battery pack before that data is lost. *Be sure to put the computer in a suspend mode before doing so.*

The battery power fail level is set so that after the system shuts down in a low battery condition, there is still sufficient charge to allow the unit to remain configured, keep proper time, and maintain DRAM (Dynamic Random Access Memory) for at least 72 hours at room temperature *if* the main battery remains in the mobile computer. The configuration and time are lost if:

- The battery discharges beyond this level.
- The battery is removed when the computer is not in suspend mode.
- A cold reset is performed on the computer.

System Status Maintained

System status is maintained in "suspend" when the main battery is removed:

- 10 minutes for 64 MB low-power chips
- 5 minutes for 128 MB low-power chips

CAB Files Within 700C Software Tools CD

If you leave the default destination while you install the "\700 Color Mgmt Tools" directory onto your desktop PC, then "C:\Intermec\Intermec 700 Color Mgmt Tools\Cab Files" will be the default directory. There are folders within the "\Cab Files" directory that contain demos and program files. See the *700 Series Color Software Tools CD User's Manual* for more information about these files.

Modem Support

Modem PC Cards are not supported by the 700 Series Computer. However, modem options do include the following:

- Switchable dock that includes a built-in modem and a serial port between which an application can switch.
- Mini-Landline Modem that can be tethered to the port on the bottom of the 700 Series Computer.
- Other external modems that may be connected to the bottom of the 700 Series Computer or to the dock.

Network Support

Radio CompactFlash Cards cannot be installed by a user. The 700 Series Computer must be serviced to install or replace radios. See Chapter 4, "*Network Support*" for more information.

- 802.11b radio
- Integrated GSM/GPRS radio
- CDPM/1xRTT radio
- Wireless printing equipped with a Bluetooth qualified module by Socket Communications

Removeable Card Support

To access either the CompactFlash (CF) or SecureDigital (SD) card slot, locate the access door at the top of the 700 Series Computer, remove its two screws, then remove the door.

CompactFlash Cards

Support is limited to one CompactFlash (CF) Storage Card in the 700 Series Computer, either for storage or for the 802.11b radio.

SecureDigital Cards

Support is limited to one SecureDigital (SD) Storage Card in the 700 Series Computer for storage.

MultiMediaCards

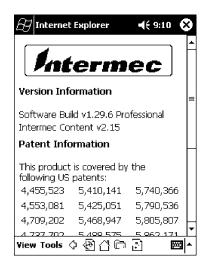
MultiMediaCards (MMCs) are not supported in the 700 Series Computers because current technology shows that SD cards will quickly surpass MMC cards in storage capacity.

Software Build Version

To check to see if your 700 Series Computer has the latest build, select Start \rightarrow Internet Explorer \rightarrow the Internet logo.



The latest software build version is displayed beneath the **Patent Informa**tion title. This information will be useful should you need customer assistance.





Note: The Unit Information control panel applet is only available in the 700 Series Computer if Intermec Content is enabled, the Plus region is enabled and installed, and a laser scanner is installed.



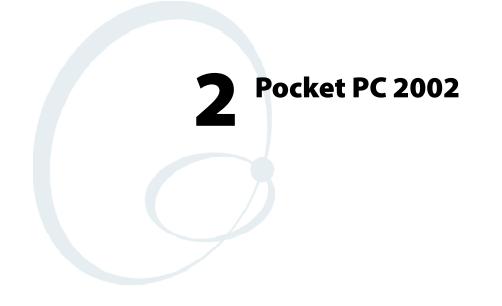
You can also view the latest software build version on your 700 Series Computer by accessing the Unit Information control panel applet. Select Start \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow the System tab \rightarrow the Unit Information icon \rightarrow the Versions tab to view the current build version on your 700 Series Computer.

83 Sett	tings	ŧ	9:30 🐽
Unit Inf	ormation		
	Platform Build,<1	.29>	
59C, Data(<> Collection Build, <	csearavimo	003.045>
	enconer energy		
<u>D</u> efaults	<u>R</u> efres	h l	<u>A</u> pply
Versions	Battery Status	CAB Files	

What's New

The newest functionality is available in software build versions 1.30 or greater. The following changes have occurred since the last release of this manual:

- Applied new publications standards to this manual.
- Adapted instructions using Ethernet connections to fit Intermec requirements in Chapter 2, "*Pocket PC 2002*."
- Moved "Updating System Software" and "EFlash" information to the Recovery CD User's Manual from Chapter 3, "Installing Applications."
- Removed several 802.11 APIs not related to the 700 Series Color Computer from Chapter 4, "*Network Support.*"
- Added the Siemens MC45 radio module to Chapter 4, "*Network Support.*"
- Added tethered scanner information to Chapter 6, "Scanner Support."
- Added CAB extraction information and FTP Server parameters to Chapter 7, "*Programming*."
- Added imager option information via the Data Collection control panel applet to Appendix A, "*Control Panel Applets.*" *Note that this is for 700 Series Computers using an imager.*



This chapter introduces the Pocket PC 2002 operating system from Microsoft Corporation.

Introduction

Congratulations on purchasing a Pocket PC. Due to the size and capabilities of this 700 Series Color Mobile Computer, you can keep your most important business and personal information up-to-date and close at hand. Microsoft ActiveSync increases the power of your 700 Series Computer by allowing you to synchronize the information on your desktop or laptop computer with your 700 Series Computer. Picture yourself in the following situations:

- A Calendar reminder alerts you that it is time to catch the bus. You grab your 700 Color Pocket PC Mobile Computer and catch the bus just in time. Because ActiveSync keeps the information on your 700 Series Computer up-to-date, you leisurely review your task list, make notes about the new books and CDs you want to buy, and read and respond to e-mail messages. When you get back to the office, ActiveSync transfers any task changes you made, your notes, and your e-mail message responses to your desktop computer. For more information on Active-Sync, see "*Microsoft ActiveSync*" on page 29.
- While walking with a colleague, your 700 Color Pocket PC Mobile Computer rings. You look at the caller ID and see it is your manager who is calling. She asks if you two are free this afternoon for an emergency meeting. While your colleague fumbles through his paper organizer, you press a button on your 700 Series Computer and instantly see a list of today's appointments and meetings. You are quickly able to tell your manager your available times, and make a note of the new meeting while on the call. You hang up, send an e-mail with a schedule request for the three of you at the desired location. For more information on scheduling appointments and meetings, see "*Microsoft Pocket Outlook*" on page 31.
- You are meeting your friends tonight for dinner and a movie. You download the latest movie information from the Internet to your desk-top computer and then synchronize it with your 700 Series Computer. At dinner, you pull out your 700 Color Pocket PC Mobile Computer and review your movie options with your friends. For more information on downloading Web pages to your 700 Series Computer, see "*Pocket Internet Explorer*" on page 62.

Premium versus Professional Editions

Your 700 Series Computer will have either the Premium Edition or the Professional Edition of Pocket PC 2002. Do the following to determine which edition of Pocket PC 2002 is on your unit.

1 Select Start \rightarrow Internet Explorer \rightarrow the Internec logo.



2 Note the "Software Build" information displayed beneath the Version Information title.



Note: If you have an older software build, your unit may say either "PREM" (which indicates the Premium Edition) or "PRO" (which indicates the Professional Edition).

🔠 Internet	Explorer	-{ € 9:10	8
Int	erm	ec	•
Version Infe	ormation		=
Software Bui Intermec Co	ld v1.29.6 Pro ntent v2.15	ofessional	
Patent Info	rmation		
This product following US	is covered by patents:	the	
4,455,523	5,410,141	5,740,366	
4,553,081	5,425,051	5,790,536	
4,709,202	5,468,947	5,805,807	'Η
4 727 702	5 /00 575	5 967 171	
View Tools <	ን֎^Րฅ	Ð 🖪	\$ ^

3 Tap the **Close** icon in the top right corner to exit the Internet Explorer. Below is a list of components for each edition of Pocket PC 2002:

Component	Premium Edition	Professional Edition
Microsoft ActiveSync Client (page 29)	Х	Х
Microsoft Pocket Outlook (page 31)	Х	Х
Pocket Word (page 47)	Х	Х
Pocket Excel (page 52)	Х	Х
MSN Messenger (page 53)	Х	
Windows Media Player for Pocket PC (page 57)	Х	RAM
Microsoft Reader (page 58)	Х	RAM
Pocket Internet Explorer (page 62)	Х	Х



Note: Components marked with "RAM" are provided on a Companion CD for download into RAM rather than burned into Flash ROM.

Where to Find Information

This chapter describes your 700 Series Computer hardware, provides an overview of the programs on your 700 Series Computer, and explains how to connect your 700 Series Computer to a desktop computer, a network, or the Internet. For instructions on setting up your 700 Series Computer and installing ActiveSync, see the Quick Start Card. The following is a guide to more information to assist you use your 700 Series Computer.

For information on:	See this source:
Programs on your mobile computer.	This chapter and mobile computer Help. To view Help, tap Start \rightarrow Help.
Additional programs that can be installed on the mobile computer.	The Pocket PC Companion CD.
Connecting to and synchronizing with a desktop computer.	The Quick Start Card or <i>AutoSync Help</i> on your desktop computer. To view Help, click Help \rightarrow Microsoft ActiveSync Help.
Last-minute updates and detailed technical information.	The Read Me files, located in the Microsoft ActiveSync folder on the desktop computer and on the Pocket PC Companion CD.
Up-to-date information on your Pocket PC.	http://www.microsoft.com/mobile/pocketpc

Pocket PC and many of the technologies supported by the 700 Series Computer are not from Intermec Technologies. Many of the utilities and features on a Pocket PC device come directly from Microsoft without any modification from Intermec Technologies. There may be certain Microsoft-specific issues that Intermec Technologies would not be able to support, so you will have to contact Microsoft Corporation. Use these URLs to determine your Microsoft support options:

- http://msdn.microsoft.com/support/
- http://support.microsoft.com/
- news://news.microsoft.com (a free support option)

Basic Skills

Learning to use your 700 Series Computer is easy. This describes the basic concepts of using and customizing your 700 Series Computer.

Buttons and Stylus

Your 700 Series Computer has hardware buttons that control actions and scroll functions, and a stylus for selecting items and entering information. On the 700 Series Computer, the stylus replaces the mouse.

• Tap:

Touch the screen once with the stylus to open items and select options.

• Drag:

Hold the stylus on the screen and drag across the screen to select text and images. Drag in a list to select multiple items.

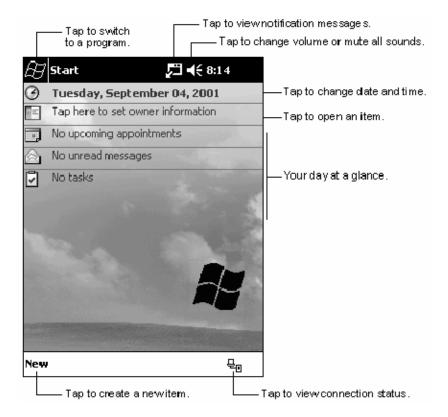
• Tap and hold:

Tap and hold the stylus on an item to see a list of actions available for that item. On the pop-up menu that appears, tap the action to be performed.

Today Screen



When you turn on your 700 Series Computer for the first time each day (*or after four hours of inactivity*), you will see the **Today** screen. You can also display it by tapping the **Start** flag (*shown left*) and then **Today**. On the **Today** screen, you can see at a glance important information for the day.



Following are some of the status icons you may see:

Meaning:





Turns all sounds on and off.



Backup battery is low.



Main batteries are charging.



Main batteries are low.



Main batteries are very low.



Main batteries are full.



Connection is active.



Synchronization is beginning or ending.



Synchronization is occurring.



Notification or one or more instant messages received.



Notification of one or more e-mail messages received.



If more notification icons need to be displayed than there is room to display them, the **Notification** icon *(shown left)* will display. Tap the icon to view all notification icons.

Programs

You can switch from one program to another by selecting it from the **Start** menu. (You can customize which programs you see on this menu. For information, see "*Adjusting Settings*" on page 26.) To access some programs, tap **Start** \rightarrow **Programs**, and then the program name.

You can also switch to some programs by pressing a program button. Your 700 Series Computer has one or more program buttons located on the front or side of the computer. The icons on the buttons identify the programs to which they switch.



Note: Some programs have abbreviated labels for check boxes and dropdown menus. To see the full spelling of an abbreviated label, tap and hold the stylus on the label. Drag the stylus off the label so that the command is not carried out.

The following is a partial list of programs that are on your 700 Series Computer. Look on the Pocket PC Companion CD for additional programs that you can install onto your 700 Series Computer.



ActiveSync

Synchronize information between your 700 Series Computer and desktop computer.



Calendar

Keep track of your appointments and create meeting requests.

_
_

Contacts

Keep track of your friends and colleagues.

p,	Ur		-	
L	з.	~	-2	!
L.	25		- 3	

Inbox

Send and receive e-mail messages.

Pocket Internet Explorer

Browse Web and WAP (Wireless Application Protocol) sites, and download new programs and files from the Internet.



Notes

Create handwritten or typed notes, drawings, and recordings.

l	-	e	ł	
l	-	_	_	

Tasks

Keep track of your tasks.

Pocket Excel

Create new workbooks or view and edit Excel workbooks created on your desktop computer.



MSN Messenger

Send and receive instant messages with your MSN Messenger contacts.



Pocket Word

Create new documents or view and edit Word documents created on your desktop computer.

Navigation Bar and Command Bar

The navigation bar is located at the top of the screen. It displays the active program and current time, and allows you to switch to programs and close screens.

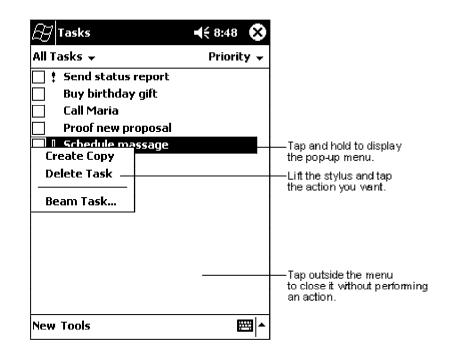
	Tap to change volume or mute the device.
<i>B</i> Start	↓ € 12:08
	Tap to quickly select a program you have recently used.
🕐 Today	
🔞 ActiveSync	
Calendar	Tap to select a program.
🖭 Contacts	
🛆 Inbox	
🎼 💭 Internet Explorer	
💭 Notes	
📋 Tasks	
🖻 Programs —	——————————————————————————————————————
🕞 Settings 🛛 —	——————————————————————————————————————
🔓 Find	
🖗 Help	

Use the command bar at the bottom of the screen to perform tasks in programs. The command bar includes menu names, buttons, and the **Input Panel** button. To create a new item in the current program, tap New. To see the name of a button, tap and hold the stylus on the button. Drag the stylus off the button so that the command is not carried out.

Newbutton.		Input panel button.
New	Edit Tools 📼 🖉	
	Menu Button: names.	8.

Pop-up Menus

With pop-up menus, you can quickly choose an action for an item. For example, you can use the pop-up menu in the contact list to quickly delete a contact, make a copy of a contact, or send an e-mail message to a contact. The actions in the pop-up menus vary from program to program. To access a pop-up menu, tap and hold the stylus on the item name that you want to perform the action on. When the menu appears, lift the stylus, and tap the action you want to perform. Or tap anywhere outside the menu to close the menu without performing an action.



Notifications

Your 700 Series Computer reminds you in a variety of ways when you have something to do. For example, if you have set up an appointment in Calendar, a task with a due date in Tasks, or an alarm in Clock, you will be notified in any of the following ways:

- A message box appears on the screen.
- A sound, which you can specify, is played.
- A light flashes on your 700 Series Computer.
- A vibrator resonates from the 700 Series Computer.

To choose reminder types and sounds for your 700 Series Computer, tap Start \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow the Personal tab \rightarrow Sounds & Notifications. The options you choose here apply throughout the 700 Series Computer.

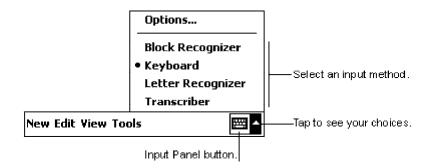
Enter Information on Your 700 Series Computer

You have several options for entering new information:

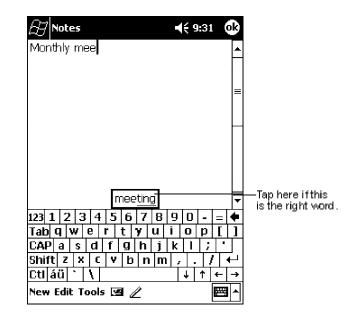
- Use the input panel to enter typed text, either by using the soft keyboard or other input method.
- Write directly on the screen.
- Draw pictures on the screen.
- Speak into your 700 Series Computer microphone to record a message.
- Use Microsoft ActiveSync to synchronize or copy information from your desktop computer to your 700 Series Computer. For more information on ActiveSync, see *ActiveSync Help* on your desktop computer.

Use the input panel to enter information in any program on your 700 Series Computer. You can either type using the soft keyboard or write using **Block Recognizer**, Letter Recognizer, or Transcriber. In either case, the characters appear as typed text on the screen.

To show or hide the input panel, tap the Input Panel button. Tap the arrow next to the Input Panel button to see your choices.



When you use the input panel, your 700 Series Computer anticipates the word you are typing or writing and displays it above the input panel. When you tap the displayed word, it is inserted into your text at the insertion point. The more you use your 700 Series Computer, the more words it learns to anticipate.





Note: To change word suggestion options, such as the number of words suggested at one time, tap Start \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow the Personal tab \rightarrow Input \rightarrow the Word Completion tab.

Typing With the Soft Keyboard

1 Tap the arrow next to the Input Panel button, and then Keyboard.

2 On the soft keyboard that is displayed, tap the keys with your stylus.

Using Block Recognizer

With Block Recognizer, you can input character strokes using the stylus that are similar to those used on other 700 Series Computers.

1 Tap the arrow next to the Input Panel button, then Block Recognizer.

2 Write a letter in the box.

When you write a letter, it is converted to typed text that appears on the screen. For specific instructions on using Block Recognizer, with Block Recognizer open, tap the question mark next to the writing area.

Using Letter Recognizer

With Letter Recognizer, you can write letters using the stylus just as you would on paper.

1 Tap the arrow next to the **Input Panel** button, then **Letter Recognizer**.

2 Write a letter in the box.

When you write a letter, it is converted to typed text that appears on the screen. For specific instructions on using Letter Recognizer, with Letter Recognizer open, tap the question mark next to the writing area.

Using Transcriber

With Transcriber, you can write anywhere on the screen using the stylus just as you would on paper. Unlike Letter Recognizer and Block Recognizer, you can write a sentence or more of information. Then, pause and let Transcriber change the written characters to typed characters.

1 Tap the arrow next to the Input Panel button, and then Transcriber.

2 Write anywhere on the screen.

For specific instructions on using Transcriber, with Transcriber open, tap the question mark in the lower right hand corner of the screen.

Selecting Typed Text

If you want to edit or format typed text, you must select it first.

• Drag the stylus across the text you want to select.

You can cut, copy, and paste text by tapping and holding the selected words and then tapping an editing command on the pop-up menu, or by tapping the command on the Edit menu.

Writing on the Screen

In any program that accepts writing, such as the Notes program, and in the **Notes** tab in Calendar, Contacts, and Tasks, you can use your stylus to write directly on the screen. Write the way you do on paper. You can edit and format what you have written and convert the information to text at a later time.

• Tap the **Pen** button to switch to writing mode. This action displays lines on the screen to help you write.

8 Notes	-{ € 9:39	œ
TUR	N	
ΙΛ	,	
REF	ORT	
		_ _
New Edit Tools 🗹	<u> </u>	≊∎ ^
	Tap the Pen butto your stylus like a p	n and use en.



Note: Some programs that accept writing may not have the **Pen** button. See the documentation for that program to find out how to switch to writing mode.

Selecting the Writing

If you want to edit or format writing, you must select it first.

- 1 Tap and hold the stylus next to the text you want to select until the insertion point appears.
- 2 Without lifting, drag the stylus across the text you want to select.

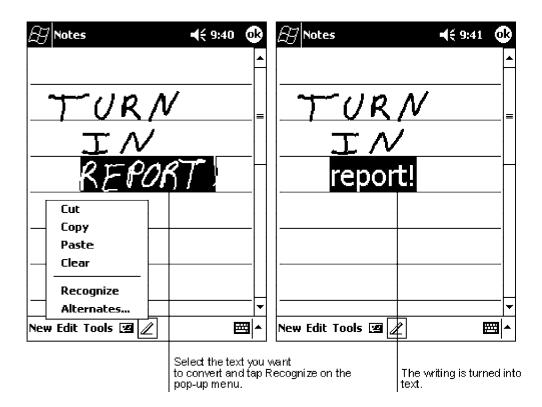
If you accidentally write on the screen, tap **Tools** \rightarrow **Undo** and try again. You can also select text by tapping the **Pen** button to deselect it and then dragging the stylus across the screen.

You can cut, copy, and paste written text in the same way you work with typed text: tap and hold the selected words and then tap an editing command on the pop-up menu, or tap the command on the **Edit** menu.

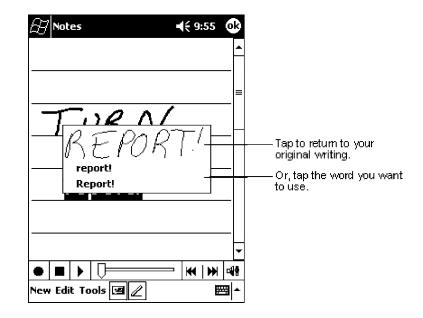
Converting Writing to Text

• Tap Tools \rightarrow Recognize.

If you want to convert only certain words, select them before tapping **Recognize** on the **Tools** menu (or tap and hold the selected words and then tap **Recognize** on the pop-up menu). If a word is not recognized, it is left as writing.



If the conversion is incorrect, you can select different words from a list of alternates or return to the original writing. To do so, tap and hold the incorrect word (tap one word at a time). On the pop-up menu, tap Alternates. A menu with a list of alternate words appears. Tap the word you want to use, or tap the writing at the top of the menu to return to the original writing.



Tips for getting good recognition:

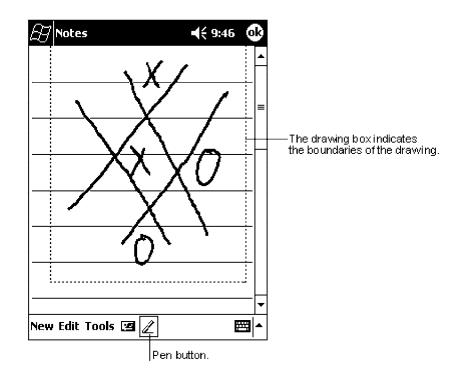
- Write neatly.
- Write on the lines and draw descenders below the line. Write the cross of the "t" and apostrophes below the top line so that they are not confused with the word above. Write periods and commas above the line.
- For better recognition, try increasing the zoom level to 300% using the Tools menu.
- Write the letters of a word closely and leave big gaps between words so that the 700 Series Computer can easily tell where words begin and end.
- Hyphenated words, foreign words that use special characters such as accents, and some punctuation cannot be converted.
- If you add writing to a word to change it (such as changing a "3" to an "8") after you attempt to recognize the word, the writing you add will not be included if you attempt to recognize the writing again.

Drawing on the Screen

You can draw on the screen in the same way that you write on the screen. The difference between writing and drawing on the screen is how you select items and how they can be edited. For example, selected drawings can be resized, while writing cannot.

Creating a Drawing

• Cross three ruled lines on your first stroke. A drawing box appears. Subsequent strokes in or touching the drawing box become part of the drawing. Drawings that do not cross three ruled lines will be treated as writing.





Note: You may want to change the zoom level so that you can more easily work on or view your drawing. Tap Tools and then a zoom level.

Selecting a Drawing

If you want to edit or format a drawing, you must select it first.

• Tap and hold the stylus on the drawing until the selection handle appears. To select multiple drawings, deselect the **Pen** button and then drag to select the drawings you want.

You can cut, copy, and paste selected drawings by tapping and holding the selected drawing and then tapping an editing command on the pop-up menu, or by tapping the command on the **Edit** menu. To resize a drawing, make sure the **Pen** button is not selected, and drag a selection handle.

Recording a Message

In any program where you can write or draw on the screen, you can also quickly capture thoughts, reminders, and phone numbers by recording a message. In Calendar, Tasks, and Contacts, you can include a recording in the **Notes** tab. In the Notes program, you can create a stand-alone recording or include a recording in a written note. If you want to include the recording in a note, open the note first. In the Inbox program, you can add a recording to an e-mail message.

Creating a Recording

- 1 Hold your computer's microphone near your mouth or source of sound.
- **2** Press and hold the **Record** hardware button on your 700 Series Computer until you hear a beep.
- 3 While holding down the **Record** button, make your recording.
- **4** To stop recording, release the **Record** button. Two beeps will sound. The new recording appears in the note list or as an embedded icon.



Note: You can also make a recording by tapping the **Record** button on the Recording toolbar.

To play a recording, tap it in the list or tap its icon in the note.

8 Note	:5		-{ € 9:	47	œ	
Ø :-						Indicates an embedded
<u></u>					-	recording.
·					_ ≡	
Q	uot	e				
-		Adam	ו			
					-	
·					_	
					•	Tap to begin recording.
• •	▶ []]F		- 🖌	₩	ole	
New Edit	Tools	2			a	
		Tap to sho the Record	wor hid dina tool	e bar.		

Using My Text

When using Inbox or MSN Messenger, use My Text to quickly insert preset or frequently used messages into the text entry area. To insert a message, tap My Text and tap a message.

🖉 MSN Mes	😥 MSN Messenger 🛛 📢 1:58 👩			
You are chatt	ing with: Ac	lam		
Kim Akers sa	iys:			
Hi. Can you me	et at 2:00?			
Adam says:				
I have another	appointment :	scheduled for 2	2:00,	
but am availab	Yes.		ا ٦	
	No.			
		k right now.		
		-	d	
	I'll be righ			
Last message	I'm runnir	ig late.		
	Where are	e you?		
123 1 2 3 Tab 0 W 8	Hi.			
	Goodbye.			
CAP a s i Shift z x i	Call me la	ter.	, L	
		Pocket PC!		
Cti áü 🔪			╧╋┥	
Tools Chats My Text 🤱 🛛 🖼 🖊				
) to select a written messaj	qe.	



Note: You can add text after inserting a My Text message before sending it.

To edit a My Text message, in the **Tools** menu, tap Edit \rightarrow My Text Messages. Select the message you wish to edit and make desired changes.

Finding and Organizing Information

The Find feature on your 700 Series Computer helps you quickly locate information.

Tap Start \rightarrow Find. Enter the text you want to find, select a data type, and then tap Go to initiate the search.



Tap to change folders.

Note: To quickly find information that is taking up storage space on your 700 Series Computer, select Larger than 64 KB in Type.

You can also use the File Explorer to find files on your 700 Series Computer and to organize these files into folders. Tap **Start** \rightarrow **Programs** \rightarrow **File Explorer**.

🎢 File Explorer	12:34p	
My Device ▼	Name 🚽	—Select the sort order for the list.
My Documents Program Files Storage Card Temp Windows		—Tap the folder name to open it.
Refresh Paste New Folder		—Tap and hold to create a new folder.
Edit	₩	



Note: You can move files in File Explorer by tapping and holding the item you want to move, and then tapping **Cut** or **Copy** and **Paste** on the popup menu.

Customizing Your 700 Series Computer

You can customize your 700 Series Computer by adjusting settings and installing additional software.

Adjusting Settings

You can adjust settings to suit the way you work. To see available options, tap $Start \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow$ either the Personal tab or the System tab located at the bottom of the screen. You might want to adjust the following:

Clock:

To change the time or to set alarms.

• Menus:

To customize what appears on the **Start** menu, and to enable a pop-up menu from the **New** button.

• Owner Information:

To enter your contact information.

- Password: To limit access to your 700 Series Computer.
- **Power:** To maximize battery life.
- Today:

To customize the look and information displayed on the Today screen.

Adding or Removing Programs

Programs added to your 700 Series Computer at the factory are stored in ROM (Read Only Memory). You cannot remove this software, and you will never accidentally lose ROM contents. ROM programs can be updated using special installation programs with a *.XIP extension. All other programs and data files added to your 700 Series Computer after factory installation are stored in RAM (Random Access Memory).

You can install any program created for your 700 Series Computer, as long as your 700 Series Computer has enough memory. The most popular place to find software for your 700 Series Computer is on the Pocket PC Web site (*http://www.microsoft.com/mobile/pocketpc*).

Adding Programs Using ActiveSync

You will need to install the appropriate software for your 700 Series Computer on your desktop computer before installing it on your 700 Series Computer.

- 1 Determine your 700 Series Computer and processor type so that you know which version of the software to install. Tap Start → Settings → the System tab → About → the Version tab, then make a note of the information in Processor.
- 2 Download the program to your desktop computer (or insert the CD or disk that contains the program into your desktop computer). You may see a single *.XIP, *.EXE, or *.ZIP file, a SETUP.EXE file, or several versions of files for different 700 Series Computer types and processors. Be sure to select the program designed for the Pocket PC and your 700 Series Computer processor type.

- **3** Read any installation instructions, Read Me files, or documentation that comes with the program. Many programs provide special installation instructions.
- 4 Connect your 700 Series Computer and desktop computer.
- **5** Double-click the *.EXE file.
 - If the file is an installer, the installation wizard will begin. Follow the directions on the screen. Once the software has been installed on your desktop computer, the installer will automatically transfer the software to your 700 Series Computer.
 - If the file is not an installer, you will see an error message stating that the program is valid but it is designed for a different type of computer. You will need to move this file to your 700 Series Computer. If you cannot find any installation instructions for the program in the Read Me file or documentation, use ActiveSync Explore to copy the program file to the Program Files folder on your 700 Series Computer. For more information on copying files using ActiveSync, see *ActiveSync Help*.

Once installation is complete, tap Start \rightarrow Programs, and then the program icon to switch to it.

Adding a Program Directly from the Internet

- 1 Determine your 700 Series Computer and processor type so that you know which version of the software to install. Tap Start → Settings → the System tab → About → the Version tab, then make a note of the information in Processor.
- Download the program to your 700 Series Computer straight from the Internet using Pocket Internet Explorer. You may see a single *.XIP,
 *.EXE, or *.ZIP file, a SETUP.EXE file, or several versions of files for different 700 Series Computer types and processors. Be sure to select the program designed for the Pocket PC and your 700 Series Computer processor type.
- **3** Read any installation instructions, Read Me files, or documentation that comes with the program. Many programs provide installation instructions.
- **4** Tap the file, such as a *.XIP or *.EXE file. The installation wizard will begin. Follow the directions on the screen.

Adding a Program to the Start Menu

Tap Start \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Menus \rightarrow the Start Menu tab, and then the check box for the program. If you do not see the program listed, you can either use File Explorer on the 700 Series Computer to move the program to the Start Menu folder, or use ActiveSync on the desktop computer to create a shortcut to the program and place the shortcut in the Start Menu folder.

• Using File Explorer on the 700 Series Computer:

Tap Start \rightarrow Programs \rightarrow File Explorer, and locate the program (tap the folder list, labeled My Documents by default, and then My Device to see a list of all folders on the 700 Series Computer). Tap and hold the program and tap Cut on the pop-up menu. Open the Start Menu folder located in the Windows folder, tap and hold a blank area of the window, and tap Paste on the pop-up menu. The program will now appear on the Start menu. For more information on using File Explorer, see *"Finding and Organizing Information"* on page 25.

• Using ActiveSync on the desktop computer:

Use the Explorer in ActiveSync to explore your 700 Series Computer files and locate the program. Right-click the program, and then click **Create Shortcut**. Move the shortcut to the **Start Menu** folder in the Windows folder. The shortcut now appears on the **Start** menu. For more information, see *ActiveSync Help*.

Removing Programs

• Tap Start \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow the System tab \rightarrow Remove Programs.

If the program does not appear in the list of installed programs, use File Explorer on your 700 Series Computer to locate the program, tap and hold the program, and then tap **Delete** on the pop-up menu.

Microsoft ActiveSync

Visit the following Microsoft Web site for the latest in updates, technical information, and samples:

• http://www.microsoft.com/mobile/pocketpc/downloads/activesync.asp

Using Microsoft ActiveSync, you can synchronize the information on your desktop computer with the information on your 700 Series Computer. Synchronization compares the data on your 700 Series Computer with your desktop computer and updates both computers with the most recent information. For example:

- Keep Pocket Outlook data up-to-date by synchronizing your 700 Series Computer with Microsoft Outlook data on your desktop computer.
- Synchronize Microsoft Word and Microsoft Excel files between your 700 Series Computer and desktop computer. Your files are automatically converted to the correct format



Note: By default, ActiveSync does not automatically synchronize all types of information. Use ActiveSync options to turn synchronization on and off for specific information types.

With ActiveSync, you can also:

- Back up and restore your 700 Series Computer data.
- Copy (rather than synchronize) files between your 700 Series Computer and desktop computer.
- Control when synchronization occurs by selecting a synchronization mode. For example, you can synchronize continually while connected to your desktop computer or only when you choose the synchronize command.
- Select which information types are synchronized and control how much data is synchronized. For example, you can choose how many weeks of past appointments you want synchronized.

Before you begin synchronization, install ActiveSync on your desktop computer from the Pocket PC Companion CD. For more information on installing ActiveSync, see your Quick Start card. ActiveSync is already installed on your 700 Series Computer.

After installation is complete, the ActiveSync Setup Wizard helps you connect your 700 Series Computer to your desktop computer, set up a partnership so you can synchronize information between your 700 Series Computer and your desktop computer, and customize your synchronization settings. Your first synchronization process will automatically begin when you finish using the wizard.

After your first synchronization, take a look at Calendar, Contacts, and Tasks on your 700 Series Computer. You will notice that information you have stored in Microsoft Outlook on your desktop computer has been copied to your 700 Series Computer, and you did not have to type a word. Disconnect your 700 Series Computer from your computer and you are ready to go! Once you have set up ActiveSync and completed the first synchronization process, you can initiate synchronization from your 700 Series Computer. To switch to ActiveSync on your 700 Series Computer, tap **Start** \rightarrow **ActiveSync**. Note that if you have a wireless LAN card, you can synchronize remotely from your 700 Series Computer.

For information about using ActiveSync on your desktop computer, start ActiveSync on your desktop computer, and then see *ActiveSync Help*.

🔠 ActiveSync	📢 11:35 😵	
Pocket_PC2	ଭ	
Connected	U	——View connection status. —— Tap to connect and synchronize.
		— Tap to connect and synchronize. — Tap to stop synchronization.
🕲 Sync 🕺 Stop		
Synchronize with PC Last Sync: 4/25/01 10:52 AM		——View synchronization status.
Tools	E	
Tap to synchronize victure to synchronize to	ia IR or ion settings.	

For more information about ActiveSync on your 700 Series Computer, switch to ActiveSync, then tap Start \rightarrow Help.

Microsoft Pocket Outlook



Note: The Professional Edition of Microsoft Pocket Outlook does not include a spell checker.

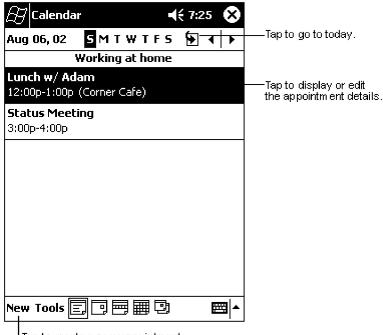
Microsoft Pocket Outlook includes Calendar, Contacts, Tasks, Inbox, and Notes. You can use these programs individually or together. For example, e-mail addresses stored in Contacts can be used to address e-mail messages in Inbox.

Using ActiveSync, you can synchronize information in Microsoft Outlook or Microsoft Exchange on your desktop computer with your 700 Series Computer. You can also synchronize this information directly with a Microsoft Exchange server. Each time you synchronize, ActiveSync compares the changes you made on your 700 Series Computer and desktop computer or server and updates both computers with the latest information. For information on using ActiveSync, see *ActiveSync Help* on the desktop computer.

You can switch to any of these programs by tapping them on the **Start** menu.

Calendar: Scheduling Appointments and Meetings

Use Calendar to schedule appointments, including meetings and other events. You can check your appointments in one of several views (Agenda, Day, Week, Month, and Year) and easily switch views by using the **View** menu.



Tap to create a new appointment.



Note: You can customize the Calendar display, such as changing the first day of the week, by tapping **Options** on the **Tools** menu.

Creating an Appointment

- 1 If you are in **Day** or **Week** view, tap the desired date and time for the appointment.
- 2 Tap New.
- **3** Using the input panel, enter a description and a location. Tap first to select the field.
- 4 If needed, tap the date and time to change them.
- **5** Enter other desired information. You will need to hide the input panel to see all available fields.
- 6 To add notes, tap the Notes tab. You can enter text, draw, or create a recording. For more information on creating notes, see "*Notes: Capturing Thoughts and Ideas*" on page 40.
- 7 When finished, tap OK to return to the calendar.

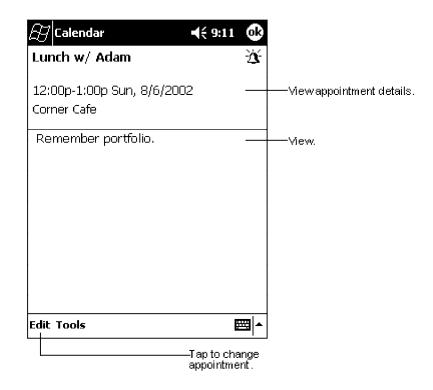
	Tap to return to the calendar (the appointment is saved autom atically).	
🔠 Calendar	∢ € 8:52	Tap to choose from predefined text.
Subject:		- ₽₽
Location:		 Tap to choose from previously entered locations.
Starts:	8/6/02 12:00 PM	
Ends:	8/6/02 1:00 PM	▼ Tap to select a time.
Type:	Normal	Tap to select a date.
Occurs:	Once	-
Reminder:	Remind me	_
	15 minute(s)	-
Categories:	No categories	_
Appointment I	Notes	Notes is a good place
123 1 2 3	4 5 6 7 8 9 0 - =	for maps and directions.
Tab q w e	rtyuiop[]
CAP a s d	f g h j k ; ; •	
Shift Z X	C V b n m , . / +	_J
Ctl áü 🔪 🚶	↓ ↑ ←	→
Edit		



Note: If you select Remind me in an appointment, your 700 Series Computer will remind you according to the options set in Start \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow the Personal tab \rightarrow Sounds & Reminders.

Using the Summary Screen

When you tap an appointment in Calendar, a summary screen is displayed. To change the appointment, tap Edit.



Creating Meeting Requests

You can use Calendar to set up meetings with users of Outlook or Pocket Outlook. The meeting request will be created automatically and sent either when you synchronize Inbox or when you connect to your e-mail server. Indicate how you want meeting requests sent by tapping Tools \rightarrow Options. If you send and receive e-mail messages through ActiveSync, select ActiveSync.

Scheduling a Meeting

- **1** Create an appointment.
- 2 In the appointment details, hide the input panel, and then tap Attendees.
- **3** From the list of e-mail addresses you have entered in Contacts, select the meeting attendees.

The meeting notice is created automatically and placed in the Outbox folder.

For more information on sending and receiving meeting requests, see Calendar Help and Inbox Help on the 700 Series Computer.

Contacts: Tracking Friends and Colleagues

Contacts maintains a list of your friends and colleagues so that you can easily find the information you are looking for, whether you are at home or on the road. Using the 700 Series Computer infrared (IR) port, you can quickly share Contacts information with other 700 Series Computer users.

	Select the catego you want displaye		
🕖 Contacts		({ 2:06 🛛 🗙	
All Contacts #ab cde fqh Barr, Adam Bready, Richa Brown To Create Cop Delete Con Send E-mai Beam Cont	ijk mn opq r (206) 555-1 ard rich@prosev (206) 555-1 y tact il to Contact	ware e	 Tap and enter part of a name to quickly find it in the list. Tap to see additional phone numbers and e-mail addresses. Tap to display or edit the contact details. Tap and hold to display a pop-up menu of actions.
New View To	ols	■	

Tap to create a new contact.



Note: To change the way information is displayed in the list, tap Tools \rightarrow Options.

Creating a Contact

- 1 Tap New.
- **2** Using the input panel, enter a name and other contact information. You will need to scroll down to see all available fields.
- **3** To assign the contact to a category, scroll to and tap **Categories** and select a category from the list. In the contact list, you can display contacts by category.
- **4** To add notes, tap the **Notes** tab. You can enter text, draw, or create a recording. For more information on creating notes, see "*Notes: Capturing Thoughts and Ideas*" on page 40.

Tap to return to the contact list (the contact is saved autom atically).	
æ Contacts	3
Name:	▲
Job title:	
Department:	
Company:	
Work tel:	
Work fax:	
Work addr:	
E-mail:	
Mob <u>ile tel:</u>	l┳ — Scroll to see more fields
Details Notes	Notes is a good place
123 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 - = (for maps and directions.
Tab q w e r t y u i o p []]
CAP a s d f g h j k l ; '	
Shift z x ⊂ v b n m , . / ←	
Cti áü ` \ ↓ ↑ ← -	→
Edit 🖼 ·	▲

5 When finished, tap OK to return to the contact list.

Finding a Contact

There are four ways to find a contact:

- In the contact list, enter a contact name in the box under the navigation bar. To show all contacts again, clear text from the box or tap the button to the right of the box.
- In the contact list, tap the category list (labeled All Contacts by default) and select the type of contact that you want displayed. To show all contacts again, select All Contacts. To view a contact not assigned to a category, select None.
- To view the names of companies your contacts work for, in the contact list, tap View → By Company. The number of contacts that work for that company will be displayed to the right of the company name.
- Tap Start → Find, enter the contact name, select Contacts for the type, and then tap Go.

Using the Summary Screen

When you tap a contact in the contact list, a summary screen is displayed. To change the contact information, tap Edit.

🔁 Contacts	4 € 9:07 🛛 🔂	
Adam Gabor		
Programmer		View contact details
R&D		
Inspired Technologies		
(206) 555-1212	Work tel	
111 First St.	Work addr	
Summary Notes		—— Tap to viewnotes.
Edit Tools	•	
Tap to change conta		I

Tasks: Keeping a To Do List

Select the category of tasks you want displayed in the list. 69 Tasks € 8:48 X All Tasks 🗸 Priority . Select the sort order of the list. 1 Send status report Indicates high priority. Buy birthday gift Call Maria **Proof new proposal** 🛯 🕅 Schedule massage Tap to display or edit Create Copy the task details. Delete Task Tap and hold to display Beam Task... <u>....</u> New Tools Tap to create a new task.

a pop-up menu of actions.

Note: To change the way information is displayed in the list, tap Tools \rightarrow **Options**.

Use Tasks to keep track of what you have to do.

Creating a Task

1 Tap New.

- **2** Using the input panel, enter a description.
- **3** You can enter a start date and due date or enter other information by first tapping the field. If the input panel is open, you will need to hide it to see all available fields.
- **4** To assign the task to a category, tap **Categories** and select a category from the list. In the task list, you can display tasks by category.
- **5** To add notes, tap the **Notes** tab. You can enter text, draw, or create a recording. For more information on creating notes, see "*Notes: Capturing Thoughts and Ideas*" on page 40.
- 6 When finished, tap OK to return to the task list.

	Tap to return to the task list (the task is saved autom atically).	
🔠 Tasks	4 € 8:49 🐽	
Subject:	▼	Tap to choose from
Priority:	Normal	prédefined subjects.
Status:	Not Completed	
Starts:	None	
Due:	None	
Occurs:	Once	
Reminder:	None	
Categories:	No categories,.,	
Task Notes		Notes is a good place
123 1 2 3	4 5 6 7 8 9 0 - = 🗲	for maps and drawings
Tab q w e	r t y u i o p[[]]	
CAP a s c	1 f g h j k l ; '	
	C V b n m , . / 🐳	
Ctl áü 🔪 🔪	↓ ↑ ← →	
Edit		



Note: To quickly create a task with only a subject, tap Entry Bar on the Tools menu. Then, tap Tap here to add a new task and enter your task information.

Using the Summary Screen

When you tap a task in the task list, a summary screen is displayed. To change the task, tap Edit.

87 Tasks		-(€ 9:09	0 2	
Starts: Due:	tus report 8/18/2002 8/18/2002		! 	
Send to format.	the whole team	using the r	1ew	summary information. ——View notes.
Edit Tools	to change task.	Ē	⊡ ^	

Notes: Capturing Thoughts and Ideas

Quickly capture thoughts, reminders, ideas, drawings, and phone numbers with Notes. You can create a written note or a recording. You can also include a recording in a note. If a note is open when you create the recording, it will be included in the note as an icon. If the note list is displayed, it will be created as a stand-alone recording.

🛃 Notes	- €	8:55 ጰ	
🖰 All Folders 🗸		Name 🛨	Tap to change the sort
Business 1	8:54 a	424b	order of the list.
💭 Outlook Notes1	8:54 a	428b	
💭 Personal 1	8:54 a	424b	
Create Copy	8:54 a	432b	— Tap to open a note or play a recording.
Delete Select All			— Tap and hold to display a pop-up menu of actions.
Send via E-mail Beam File			
Rename/Move			
			——Tap to record.
		₹ 8	
New Tools 🔄		™	— Tap to show or hide the
Tonto grada a navu ite	- 0.1		Recording toolbar.

Tap to create a new item.

Creating a Note

- 1 Tap New.
- **2** Create your note by writing, drawing, typing, and recording. For more information about using the input panel, writing and drawing on the screen, and creating recordings, see "*Basic Skills*" on page 11.

	Tap to return to the nota list (the note is saved automatically).	ie
😥 Notes	∢ € 8:59	@
Team meeting I	notes:	
Adam will send team.	current status to core	=
Julie will get the	e revenue numbers.	
	from the conference t the product was a	↓
Tabiq wer CAPia sdi1	5 6 7 8 9 0 - = t y u i o p [7 g h j k l ; ' v b n m , . /	
Ctláü \\	┆┊┊┊┊╎╡╎┽ ╡	
New Edit Tools	Tap to write on the s	the input panel.
	Tap to add a recording to the note.	

Inbox: Sending and Receiving E-mail Messages

Use Inbox to send and receive e-mail messages in either of these ways:

- Synchronize e-mail messages with Microsoft Exchange or Microsoft Outlook on your desktop computer.
- Send and receive e-mail messages by connecting directly to an e-mail server through an Internet Service Provider (ISP) or a network.

Synchronizing E-mail Messages

E-mail messages can be synchronized as part of the general synchronization process. You will need to enable Inbox synchronization in ActiveSync. For information on enabling Inbox synchronization, see *ActiveSync Help* on the desktop computer. During synchronization:

- Messages are copied from the mail folders of Exchange or Outlook on your desktop computer to the ActiveSync folder in Inbox on your 700 Series Computer. By default, you will receive messages from the past three days only, the first 100 lines of each message, and file attachments of less than 100 KB in size.
- E-mail messages in the Outbox folder on your 700 Series Computer are transferred to Exchange or Outlook, and then sent from those programs.
- E-mail messages in subfolders must be selected in ActiveSync on your desktop computer in order to be transferred.

Connecting Directly to an E-mail Server

In addition to synchronizing e-mail messages with your desktop computer, you can send and receive e-mail messages by connecting to an e-mail server using a modem or network card connected to your 700 Series Computer. You will need to set up a remote connection to a network or an ISP, and a connection to your e-mail server. For more information, see "*Getting Connected*" on page 67.

When you connect to the e-mail server, new messages are downloaded to the 700 Series Computer Inbox folder, messages in the 700 Series Computer Outbox folder are sent, and messages that have been deleted on the e-mail server are removed from the 700 Series Computer Inbox folder.

Messages that you receive directly from an e-mail server are linked to your e-mail server rather than your desktop computer. When you delete a message on your 700 Series Computer, it is also deleted from the e-mail server the next time you connect based on the settings selected in ActiveSync.

You can work online or offline. When working online, you read and respond to messages while connected to the e-mail server. Messages are sent as soon as you tap **Send**, which saves space on your 700 Series Computer.

When working offline, once you have downloaded new message headers or partial messages, you can disconnect from the e-mail server and then decide which messages to download completely. The next time you connect, Inbox downloads the complete messages you have marked for retrieval and sends the messages you have composed.

Using the Message List

Messages you receive are displayed in the message list. By default, the most recently received messages are displayed first in the list.

	he service and folder nt to display.		
🖉 Inbox	◀€ 2:05	X	
Inbox 🕂	Received Date	₹-	Select the sort order
Robert Brov RE: Today's		•	for messages. ——Tap to open a message.
Jay Adams RE: Please re	Mark as Unread		Tap and hold to display
Andrew Dixo Status Repor	Mark for Download		a pop-up menu of actions.
🔗 Bradley Beck RE: Lunch	Reply]≡ 	
Stuart Munst PocketPC	Reply All Forward		
🔗 Linda Mitchel Reminder	 Delete		
RE: Working k	4:45PM ZZK ate	1	
Adam Barr Don't forget	7:15PM 1K]-	
Inbox: ActiveSync	11 Items.		
New Tools Serv	ices 📮 🚰 🛛 🖼	•	
	Tap to connect send and rece Tap to connect to		
	the selected servic	в.	

When you receive a message, tap it to open it. Unread messages are displayed in bold.

Inbox ◄€ 2:17 Image: Comparison of the second	Tap to return to the message list.
Just a reminder to bring your individual schedules for the next 2 quarters with you. We will be discussing projects and timelines.	
Thanks, Bob	
New Edit 및 달 수 · 문제 스	—— Tap to delete this message.
Tap to view the previous or next message. Tap to reply to or forward this message.	3

When you connect to your e-mail server or synchronize with your desktop computer, by default, you will receive messages from the last five days only, the first 100 lines of each new message, and file attachments of less than 100 KB in size. The original messages remain on the e-mail server or your desktop computer.

You can mark the messages that you want to retrieve in full during your next synchronization or e-mail server connection. In the message list, tap and hold the message you want to retrieve. On the pop-up menu, tap **Mark for Download**. The icons in the Inbox message list give you visual indications of message status.

You specify your downloading preferences when you set up the service or select your synchronization options. You can change them at any time:

- Change options for Inbox synchronization using ActiveSync options. For more information, see *ActiveSync Help*.
- Change options for direct e-mail server connections in Inbox on your 700 Series Computer. Tap Tools → Options → the Service tab, then tap the service you want to change. Tap and hold the service and select Delete to remove a service.

Composing Messages

To compose a message:

|Tap to send the message.

- 1 Tap New.
- 2 In the To field, enter an e-mail or SMS address of one or more recipients, separating them with a semicolon, or select a name from the contact list by tapping the Address Book button. All e-mail addresses entered in the e-mail fields in Contacts appear in the Address Book.
- 3 Compose your message. To enter preset or frequently used messages, tap My Text and select a message.
- **4** Tap **Send** when you have finished the message. If you are working offline, the message is moved to the Outbox folder and will be sent the next time you connect.

∑ Inbox Send Subj: < >	. € 2:19 &	—Tap to showor hide the complete header.
New Edit My Text	⊧⊡⊡ ►	
т.	Tap to show / hide th recording toolbar. Tap to display the Addrea ap to insert common messag	ssBook.

If you are sending an SMS message and want to know if it was received, tap Edit \rightarrow Options \rightarrow Request SMS text message delivery notification before sending the message.

Managing E-mail Messages and Folders

By default, messages are displayed in one of five folders for each service you have created: Inbox, Deleted Items, Drafts, Outbox, and Sent Items. The Deleted Items folder contains messages that have been deleted on the 700 Series Computer. The behavior of the Deleted and Sent Items folders depends on the options you have chosen. In the message list, tap **Tools** \rightarrow **Options** \rightarrow the **Message** tab, then select your options.

If you want to organize messages into additional folders, tap $Tools \rightarrow Manage$ Folders to create new folders. To move a message to another folder, in the message list, tap and hold the message and then tap Move to on the pop-up menu.

Folder Behavior With a Direct Connection to an E-mail Server

The behavior of the folders you create depends on whether you are using ActiveSync, SMS, POP3, or IMAP4.

• If you use ActiveSync:

E-mail messages in the Inbox folder in Outlook will automatically be synchronized with your 700 Series Computer. You can select to synchronize additional folders by designating them for ActiveSync. The folders you create and the messages you move will then be mirrored on the server. For example, if you move two messages from the Inbox folder to a folder named Family, and you have designated Family for synchronization, the server creates a copy of the Family folder and copies the messages into that folder. You can then read the messages while away from your desktop computer.

• If you use SMS:

Messages are stored in the Inbox folder.

• If you use POP3:

and you move e-mail messages to a folder you created, the link is broken between the messages on the 700 Series Computer and their copies on the mail server. The next time you connect, the mail server will see that the messages are missing from the 700 Series Computer Inbox and delete them from the server. This prevents you from having duplicate copies of a message, but it also means that you will no longer have access to messages that you move to folders created from anywhere except the 700 Series Computer.

• If you use IMAP4:

The folders you create and the e-mail messages you move are mirrored on the server. Therefore, messages are available to you anytime you connect to your mail server, whether it is from your 700 Series Computer or desktop computer. This synchronization of folders occurs whenever you connect to your mail server, create new folders, or rename/delete folders when connected.

Companion Programs

The companion programs consist of Microsoft Pocket Word, Microsoft Pocket Excel, Windows Media Player for Pocket PC, and Microsoft Reader. To switch to a companion program on your 700 Series Computer, tap **Start** \rightarrow **Programs**, then tap the program name.

Pocket Word

Pocket Word works with Microsoft Word on your desktop computer to give you easy access to copies of your documents. You can create new documents on your 700 Series Computer, or you can copy documents from your desktop computer to your 700 Series Computer. Synchronize documents between your desktop computer and your 700 Series Computer so that you have the most up-to-date content in both locations.

Creating a Document

Use Pocket Word to create documents, such as letters, meeting minutes, and trip reports. To create a new file, tap Start \rightarrow Programs \rightarrow Pocket Word \rightarrow New. A blank document appears. Or, if you have selected a template for new documents in the **Options** dialog box, that template appears with appropriate text and formatting already provided. You can open only one document at a time; when you open a second document, you will be asked to save the first. You can save a document you create or edit in a variety of formats, including Word (.DOC), Pocket Word (.PSW), Rich Text Format (.RTF), and Plain Text (.TXT). Pocket Word contains a list of the files stored on your 700 Series Computer. Tap a file in the list to open it. To delete, make copies of, and send files, tap and hold a file in the list. Then, select the appropriate action on the pop-up menu.

	the type of isplayed in f		
🖉 Pocket Word	₹	9:23 ጰ	
🖰 All Folders 🕹		Name 👻	Tap to change the sort
Agenda	9:22 a	420b	order of the list.
🖉 Doc 1	9:22 a	416b	
Meeting notes	9:22 a	428b	
Create Copy	9:23 a	424b ·	Tap to open a document.
Delete			
Select All			— Tap and hold an item to see a pop-up menu of actions.
Send via E-mail			
Beam File			
Rename/Move			
New Tools		- -	

Tap to create a new document.

You can enter information in Pocket Word in one of four modes (typing, writing, drawing, and recording), which are displayed on the View menu. Each mode has its own toolbar, which you can show and hide by tapping the Show/Hide Toolbar button on the command bar.



Note: You can change the zoom magnification by tapping View \rightarrow Zoom, then select the percentage you want. Select a higher percentage to enter text and a lower one to see more of your document.

If you are opening a Word document created on a desktop computer, select **Wrap to Window** on the **View** menu so that you can see the entire document.

Typing Mode

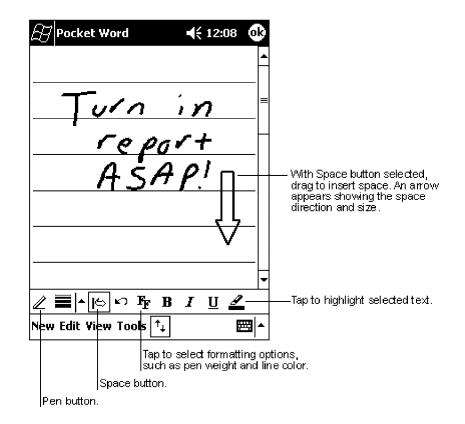
Using the input panel, enter typed text into the document. For more information on entering typed text, see "*Basic Skills*" on page 11.

To format existing text and to edit text, first select the text. You can select text as you do in a Word document, using your stylus instead of the mouse to drag through the text you want to select. You can search a document to find text by tapping Edit \rightarrow Find/Replace.

	and hold to see a up menu of actions.	「ap to return to the locument list (changes are aved automatically). –	
Pocket Meeting not Fr B I 123 1 2 3 Tab q w (CAP a s	Cut Copy Paste Clear Format Paragraph Paragraph Recognize Alternates Spell Check 5 6 7 8 9 r t y u i d f g h j k	12:06 12:06 12:06 0 - = € 0 p [] 1 ;]	-
Shift z x Ctl áü ` i	C V b n m , \ 	↓ ↑ ← →	-
New Edit Vie		showor hide bar.	

Writing Mode

In writing mode, use your stylus to write directly on the screen. Ruled lines are displayed as a guide, and the zoom magnification is greater than in typing mode to allow you to write more easily. For more information on writing and selecting writing, see "*Basic Skills*" on page 11.



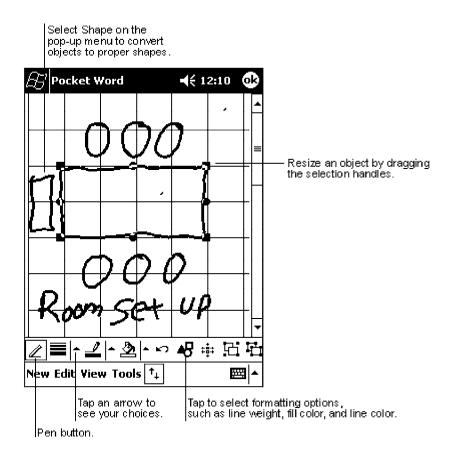


Note: If you cross three ruled lines in a single stylus stroke, the writing becomes a drawing, and can be edited and manipulated as described in "Drawing Mode" on the next page.

Written words are converted to graphics (metafiles) when a Pocket Word document is converted to a Word document on your desktop computer.

Drawing Mode

In drawing mode, use your stylus to draw on the screen. Grid lines appear as a guide. When you lift your stylus off the screen after the first stroke, you will see a drawing box indicating the boundaries of the drawing. Every subsequent stroke within or touching the drawing box becomes part of the drawing. For more information on drawing and selecting drawings, see "*Basic Skills*" on page 11.



Recording Mode

In recording mode, embed a recording into your document. Recordings are saved as .WAV files. For more information on recording, see "*Basic Skills*" on page 11.

For more information on using Pocket Word, tap Start \rightarrow Help.

Pocket Excel

Pocket Excel works with Microsoft Excel on your desktop computer to give you easy access to copies of your workbooks. You can create new workbooks on your 700 Series Computer, or you can copy workbooks from your desktop computer to your 700 Series Computer. Synchronize workbooks between your desktop computer and your 700 Series Computer so that you have the most up-to-date content in both locations.

Creating a Workbook

Use Pocket Excel to create workbooks, such as expense reports and mileage logs. To create a new file, tap Start \rightarrow Programs \rightarrow Pocket Excel \rightarrow New. A blank workbook appears. Or, if you have selected a template for new workbooks in the Options dialog box, that template appears with appropriate text and formatting already provided. You can open only one workbook at a time; when you open a second workbook, you will be asked to save the first. You can save a workbook you create or edit in a variety of formats, including Pocket Excel (.PXL) and Excel (.XLS).

Pocket Excel contains a list of the files stored on your 700 Series Computer. Tap a file in the list to open it. To delete, make copies of, and send files, tap and hold a file in the list. Then select the appropriate action from the pop-up menu.

Pocket Excel provides fundamental spreadsheet tools, such as formulas, functions, sorting, and filtering. To display the toolbar, tap View \rightarrow Toolbar.

Ħ	Pocket Exc	:el	┥€ 12:19 (@
A3		=SUM((A1:A2) -	Cell contents appear here
	Â	В	C	as you enter them .
1	\$44.00			A
2	\$22.00			
3	\$66.00			
4				
5				Format button.
				AutoSum button.
		+1	- *<< 00	
Read	· ·		n=\$66.00	<u>•</u>
$ \mathbf{F}_{\mathbf{F}} $		≣ Σ \$₽	: . ⊕,	E Zoom button.
123	1 2 3 4	5 6 7 8	3 9 0 - =	•
Tab	qwe	r tyu	i o p [
CAP	asd	fghj	i k I ; '	
Shif		V b n r	<u>n , , / </u> ;	<u>+-</u>
Ctl	áü \		↑ [←	_ →
New	Edit Yiew	Format To	ols 📬 🔛	∄ ▲



Note: If your workbook contains sensitive information, you can protect it with a password. To do so, open the workbook, tap $Edit \rightarrow Password$. Every time you open the workbook, you will need to enter the password, so choose one that is easy for you to remember but hard for others to guess.

Tips for Working in Pocket Excel

Note the following when working in large worksheets in Pocket Excel:

- View in full-screen mode to see as much of your worksheet as possible. Tap View → Full Screen. To exit full-screen mode, tap Restore.
- Show and hide window elements. Tap View and then tap the elements you want to show or hide.
- Freeze panes on a worksheet. First select the cell where you want to freeze panes. Tap View → Freeze Panes. You might want to freeze the top and leftmost panes in a worksheet to keep row and column labels visible as you scroll through a sheet.
- Split panes to view different areas of a large worksheet. Tap View →
 Split. Then drag the split bar to where you want it. To remove the split, tap View → Remove Split.
- Show and hide rows and columns. To hide a hidden row or column, select a cell in the row or column you want to hide. Then tap Format, Row or Column → Hide. To show a hidden row or column, tap Tools → Go To, and then type a reference that is in the hidden row or column. Then tap Format → Row or Column → Unhide.

For more information on using Pocket Excel, tap Start \rightarrow Help.

MSN Messenger



Note: MSN Messenger is only available on the Premium Edition of Pocket PC 2002.

MSN Messenger on your 700 Series Computer is an instant messaging program that lets you:

- See who is online.
- Send and receive instant messages.
- Have instant message conversations with groups of contacts.

To use MSN Messenger, you must have a Microsoft Passport account or a Microsoft Exchange e-mail account. You must have a Passport to use MSN Messenger Service. If you have a Hotmail or MSN account, you already have a Passport. Once you have obtained either a Microsoft Passport or a Microsoft Exchange account, you are ready to set up your account.

- Sign up for a Microsoft Passport account at http://www.passport.com.
- Get a free Microsoft Hotmail e-mail address at http://www.hotmail.com.

To switch to MSN Messenger, tap Start \rightarrow Programs \rightarrow MSN Messenger.

Setting Up

Before you can connect, you must enter Passport or Exchange account information. To set up an account and sign in:

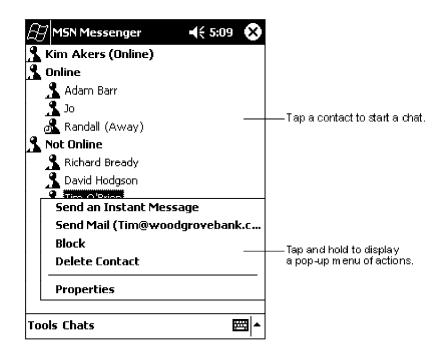
- 1 In the Tools menu, tap Options.
- **2** In the Accounts tab, enter your Passport or Exchange account information.
- **3** To sign in, tap the sign-in screen and enter your e-mail address and password.



Note: If you already use MSN Messenger on your desktop computer, your contacts will show up on your 700 Series Computer without being added again.

Working with Contacts

The MSN Messenger window shows all of your messenger contacts at a glance, divided into Online and Not Online categories. From this view, while connected, you can chat, send e-mail, block the contact from chatting with you, or delete contacts from your list using the pop-up menu.





Note: To see others online without being seen, in the Tools menu, tap My Status \rightarrow Appear Offline.

If you block a contact, you will appear offline but will remain on the blocked contact's list. To unblock a contact, tap and hold the contact, then tap **Unblock** on the pop-up menu.

Chatting with Contacts

Tap a contact name to open a chat window. Enter your message in the text entry area at the bottom of the screen, or tap My Text to enter a preset message, and tap Send. To invite another contact to a multi-user chat, in the Tools menu, tap Invite and tap the contact you want to invite.

🔠 MSN Messenger	4 € 1:56 💽	
You are chatting with: Adar	n	
	1	– Entermessage. –
Hi. Can you meet at 2:00?	Send	Tap to send message.
		_
123 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	90-=4	 1
Tab q w e r t y u	i o p []	
CAP a s d f g h j	k ; '	
Shift z x c v b n m	<u> , , / </u> ←	
Ctl áü 🔪 🔪	_ ↓ ↑ ← →	
Tools Chats My Text 🤱		·



Note: To switch back to the main window without closing a chat, tap the **Contacts** button. To revert back to your chat window, tap **Chats** and select the person whom you were chatting with.

To know if the contact you are chatting with is responding, look for the message under the text entry area.

🛃 MSN Messenger	┥╡ 1:57	ok	
You are chatting with: Adam Kim Akers says: Hi. Can you meet at 2:00?	n		—— View full chat.
😤 Adam is typing a messag		Send	—— View status of the chat
123 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	90-: i0p k1;	= 🔶 [] •]	
Shift z × c v b n m Ctláü ` \ Tools Chats My Text <u>\$</u>	, . / ↓ ↑ ∢ [8	↓ ↓ ↓ ■	

For more information on using MSN Messenger, tap Start \rightarrow Help.

Windows Media Player for Pocket PC

Use Microsoft Windows Media Player for Pocket PC to play digital audio and video files that are stored on your 700 Series Computer or on a network. To switch to Windows Media Player for Pocket PC, tap Start \rightarrow Programs \rightarrow Windows Media.

Use Microsoft Windows Media Player on your desktop computer to copy digital audio and video files to your Pocket PC. You can play Windows Media and MP3 files on your Pocket PC.

🗒 Wi	indov	vs Me	dia		10:20a		
Welc	ome	to Win	dows N	1edia !!! ·	Micros		
		U L Vin Viedi]. WS layer			ndicates the progress
(1	Pla	aying			0:00		of the current track.
	م 1						
	\mathcal{F}	\mathcal{D}	•	<u>ו</u> ל		T	ap to adjust volume.
Select	: Tool	us.					
	ap to p r pause		Tap to a previ	Tap to s the next play jous song	song.		

For more information about using Windows Media Player for Pocket PC, tap Start \rightarrow Help.

Microsoft Reader

Use Microsoft Reader to read eBooks on your 700 Series Computer. Download books to your desktop computer from your favorite eBook Web site. Then, use ActiveSync to copy the book files to your activated 700 Series Computer. The books appear in the Reader Library, where you can tap them in the list to open them. Each book consists of a cover page, an optional table of contents, and the pages of the book. You can:

- Page through the book by using the Up/Down control on your 700 Series Computer or by tapping the page number on each page.
- Annotate the book with highlighting, bookmarks, notes, and drawings.
- Search for text and look up definitions for words.

The Guidebook contains all the information you will need to use the software. To open the Guidebook, tap **Help** on the Reader command bar. Or, on a book page, tap and hold on the book title, and then tap **Help** on the pop-up menu. To switch to Microsoft Reader, tap **Start** \rightarrow **Programs** \rightarrow **Microsoft Reader**.

Getting Books on Your 700 Series Computer

You can download book files from the Web. Just visit your favorite eBook retailer and follow the instructions to download the book files.

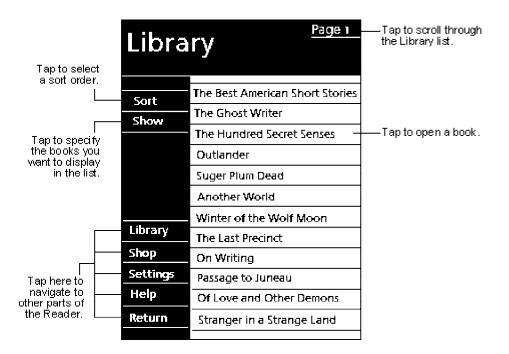
Sample books and a dictionary are also included in the MSReader folder in the Extras folder on the Pocket PC Companion CD.

Use ActiveSync to download the files from your desktop computer to your activated mobile computer as described in the Read Me file in the MSReader folder.

Using the Library

The Library is your Reader home page; it displays a list of all books stored on your 700 Series Computer or storage card. To open the Library:

- 1 On the Reader command bar, tap Library.
- **2** On a book page, tap the book title, then tap **Library** on the pop-up menu.
- **3** To open a book, tap its title in the Library list.

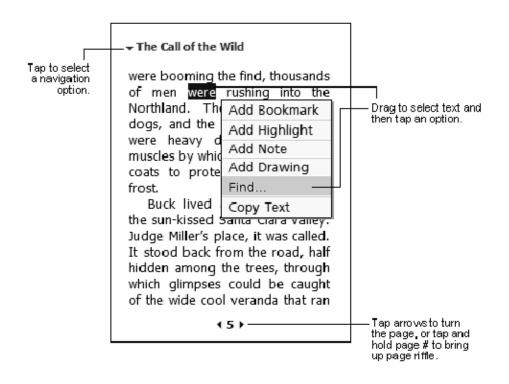


Reading a Book

Each book consists of a cover page, an optional table of contents, and the pages of the book. Navigation options are listed in the bottom portion of the cover page.

The first time you open a book, you will probably want to go to the first page or to the table of contents, if there is one. Subsequently, whenever you open the book, you will be automatically taken to the last page read.

In addition to the text, each book page includes a page number and book title.



You can also page through a book by using the Up/Down control on your 700 Series Computer.

Using Reader Features

Reading a book electronically gives you several options not available with paper books. These options are available from any book page.

Select text by dragging across the text on the page. Then, tap an option on the pop-up menu, as described here:

• Searching for Text

Find text in a book by tapping Find on the pop-up menu. Enter the word you want to search for, and tap the desired Find option. Reader highlights found text on the page. To close Find, tap outside the box. To return to your original page, tap the title and then tap **Return** on the pop-up menu.

• Copying Text

You can copy text from books that support this feature into any program that accepts text. On a book page, select the text you want to copy. Then, tap **Copy Text** on the pop-up menu. The text can be pasted into the program of your choice.

• Adding Bookmarks

When you add a bookmark to a book, a color-coded bookmark icon appears in the right margin. You can add multiple bookmarks to a book. Then, from anywhere in the book, tap the bookmark icon to go to the bookmarked page.

• Highlighting Text

When you highlight text, it appears with a colored background.

• Attaching Notes to Text

When you attach a note to text, you enter the text in a notepad that appears on top of the book page. A **Note** icon will display in the left margin. To show or hide the note, tap the icon.

• Adding Drawings

When you add a drawing, a **Drawing** icon appears in the bottom-left corner of the page, and drawing tools appear across the bottom of the page. Draw by dragging your stylus.

• Annotations Index

To see a list of a book's annotations, including bookmarks, highlights, text notes, and drawings, tap **Annotations Index** on the book's cover page. You can tap an entry in the list to go to the annotated page.

Removing a Book

When you finish reading a book, you can delete it to conserve space on your 700 Series Computer. If a copy of the book is stored on your desktop computer, you can download it again at any time.

To remove a book from your 700 Series Computer, tap and hold the title in the Library list, and then tap **Delete** on the pop-up menu.

Pocket Internet Explorer



Note: The Professional Edition of Pocket Internet Explorer does not support WAP pages.

Use Microsoft Pocket Internet Explorer to view Web or WAP pages in either of these ways:

- During synchronization with your desktop computer, download your favorite links and mobile favorites that are stored in the Mobile Favorites subfolder in Internet Explorer on the desktop computer.
- Connect to an ISP or network and browse the Web. To do this, you will need to create the connection first, as described in "*Getting Connected*" on page 67.

When connected to an ISP or network, you can also download files and programs from the Internet or intranet.

To switch to Pocket Internet Explorer, tap Start \rightarrow Internet Explorer.

The Mobile Favorites Folder

Only items stored in the Mobile Favorites subfolder in the Favorites folder in Internet Explorer on your desktop computer will be synchronized with your 700 Series Computer. This folder was created automatically when you installed ActiveSync.

Favorite Links

During synchronization, the list of favorite links in the Mobile Favorites folder on your desktop computer is synchronized with Pocket Internet Explorer on your 700 Series Computer. Both computers are updated with changes made to either list each time you synchronize. Unless you mark the favorite link as a mobile favorite, only the link will be downloaded to your 700 Series Computer, and you will need to connect to your ISP or network to view the content. For more information on synchronization, see *ActiveSync Help* on the desktop computer.

Mobile Favorites

If you are using Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.0 or later on your desktop computer, you can download mobile favorites to your 700 Series Computer. Synchronizing mobile favorites downloads Web content to your 700 Series Computer so that you can view pages while you are disconnected from your ISP and desktop computer.

Use the Internet Explorer plug-in installed with ActiveSync to create mobile favorites quickly. To create a mobile favorite:

- In Internet Explorer on your desktop computer, click Tools → Create Mobile Favorite.
- 2 To change the link name, enter a new name in the Name box.
- 3 Optionally, in Update, select a desired update schedule.

- 4 Click OK. Internet Explorer downloads the latest version of the page to your desktop computer.
- 5 If you want to download the pages that are linked to the mobile favorite you just created, in Internet Explorer on the desktop computer, right-click the mobile favorite just created and then click Properties. In the Download tab, specify the number of links deep you want to download. To conserve 700 Series Computer memory, go only one level deep.
- **6** Synchronize your 700 Series Computer and desktop computer. Mobile favorites that are stored in the Mobile Favorites folder in Internet Explorer are downloaded to your 700 Series Computer.



Note: If you did not specify an update schedule in step 3 above, you will need to manually download content to keep the information updated on your desktop computer and 700 Series Computer. Before synchronizing with your 700 Series Computer, in Internet Explorer on your desktop computer, click **Tools** \rightarrow **Synchronize**. You will see the last time content was downloaded to the desktop computer, and you can manually download content if needed.

You can add a button to the Internet Explorer toolbar for creating mobile favorites. In Internet Explorer on your desktop computer, click View \rightarrow Toolbars \rightarrow Customize.

Mobile favorites take up storage memory on your 700 Series Computer. To minimize the amount of memory used:

- In the settings for the Favorites information, type in ActiveSync options, turn off pictures and sounds, or stop some mobile favorites from being downloaded to the 700 Series Computer. For more information, see *ActiveSync Help*.
- Limit the number of downloaded linked pages. In Internet Explorer on the desktop computer, right-click the mobile favorite you want to change and then **Properties**. In the **Download** tab, specify "0" or "1" for the number of linked pages you want to download.

Using AvantGo Channels

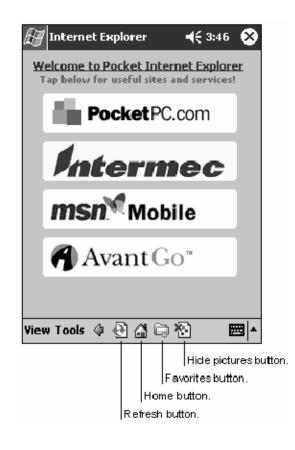
AvantGo is a free interactive service that gives you access to personalized content and thousands of popular Web sites. You subscribe to AvantGo channels directly from your 700 Series Computer. Then, you synchronize your 700 Series Computer and desktop computer, or connect to the Internet to download the content. For more information, visit the AvantGo Web site. To sign up for AvantGo:

- **1** In ActiveSync options on the desktop computer, turn on synchronization for the AvantGo information type.
- 2 In Pocket Internet Explorer on your 700 Series Computer, tap the Favorites button to display your list of favorites.
- 3 Tap the AvantGo Channels link.
- **4** Tap the **Activate** button.
- 5 Follow the directions on the screen. You will need to synchronize your 700 Series Computer with your desktop computer and then tap the My Channels button to complete the AvantGo setup.

When synchronization is complete, tap the AvantGo Channels link in your list of favorites to see a few of the most popular channels. To add or remove channels, tap the Add or Remove link.

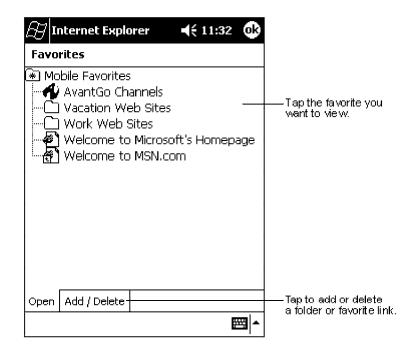
Using Pocket Internet Explorer

You can use Pocket Internet Explorer to browse mobile favorites and channels that have been downloaded to your 700 Series Computer without connecting to the Internet. You can also connect to the Internet through an ISP or a network connection and browse the Web.



Viewing Mobile Favorites and Channels

- 1 Tap the Favorites button to display your list of favorites.
- **2** Tap the page you want to view.



You will see the page that was downloaded the last time you synchronized with your desktop computer. If the page is not on your 700 Series Computer, the favorite will be dimmed. You will need to synchronize with your desktop computer again to download the page to your 700 Series Computer, or connect to the Internet to view the page.

Browsing the Internet

- 1 Set up a connection to your ISP or corporate network using Connections, as described in "*Getting Connected*" on page 67.
- **2** To connect and start browsing, do one of the following:
 - Tap the Favorites button, and then tap the favorite you want to view.
 - Tap View → Address Bar. In the address bar that appears at the top of the screen, enter the Web address you want to visit and then tap Go. Tap the arrow to choose from previously entered addresses.



Note: To add a favorite link while using the 700 Series Computer, go to the page you want to add, tap and hold on the page, and tap Add to Favorites.

Getting Connected

You can use your 700 Series Computer to exchange information with other 700 Series Computers as well as your desktop computer, a network, or the Internet. You have the following connection options:

- Use the infrared (IR) port on your 700 Series Computer to send and receive files between two 700 Series Computers. If this is the method you want to use, see "*Transferring Items Using Infrared*" below.
- Connect to your ISP. Once connected, you can send and receive e-mail messages by using Inbox and view Web or WAP pages by using Pocket Internet Explorer. The communication software for creating an ISP connection is already installed on your 700 Series Computer. Your service provider will provide software needed to install other services, such as paging and fax services. If this is the method you want to use, see "*Connecting to an Internet Service Provider*" on page 68.
- Connect to the network at your company or organization where you work. Once connected, you can send and receive e-mail messages by using Inbox, view Web or WAP pages by using Pocket Internet Explorer, and synchronize with your desktop computer. If this is the method you want to use, see "*Connecting to Work*" on page 70.
- Connect to your desktop computer to synchronize remotely. Once connected, you can synchronize information such as your Pocket Outlook information. If this is the method you want to use, see *ActiveSync Help* on your desktop computer or Connections Help on the 700 Series Computer.

Transferring Items Using Infrared

Using infrared (IR), you can send and receive information, such as contacts and appointments, between two 700 Series Computers.

Sending Information

- 1 Switch to the program where you created the item you want to send and locate the item in the list.
- **2** Align the IR ports so that they are unobstructed and within a close range.
- 3 Tap and hold the item, and tap Beam Item on the pop-up menu.



Note: You can also send items, but not folders, from File Explorer. Tap and hold the item you want to send, and then tap **Beam File** on the pop-up menu.

Receiving Information

- **1** Align the IR ports so that they are unobstructed and within a close range.
- 2 Have the owner of the other 700 Series Computer send the information to you. Your 700 Series Computer will automatically receive it.

Connecting to an Internet Service Provider

You can connect to your ISP, and use the connection to send and receive e-mail messages and view Web or WAP pages. You can connect to your ISP in one of two ways:

- Create a modem connection. If this is the method you want to use, see "*Creating a Modem Connection to an ISP*" below.
- Use an Ethernet card and a net tap to connect to the network. If this is the method you want to use, see "*Creating an Ethernet Connection to an ISP*" on page 69.

Creating a Modem Connection to an ISP

- **1** Obtain the following information from your ISP. Some ISPs require information in front of the user name, such as MSN/username.
 - ISP dial-up access telephone number
 - User name
 - Password
 - TCP/IP settings
- 2 If your 700 Series Computer does not have a built-in modem, install a modem card, or use or use a NULL modem cable and appropriate adapters to connect an external modem to your 700 Series Computer through the serial port.
- 3 Tap Start → Settings → the Connections tab → Connections. Under The Internet settings, select Internet Settings → Modify.
- 4 In the Modem tab, tap New.
- 5 Enter a name for the connection, such as "ISP Connection."
- **6** In Select a modem list, select your modem type. If your modem type does not appear, try reinserting the modem card. If you are using an external modem that is connected to your 700 Series Computer with a cable, select "Hayes Compatible on COM1."
- 7 You should not need to change any settings in Advanced. Most ISPs now use a dynamically-assigned address. If the ISP you are connecting to does not use a dynamically-assigned address, tap Advanced \rightarrow the TCP/IP tab, then enter the address. When finished, tap OK \rightarrow Next.
- 8 Enter the access phone number, and tap Next.
- 9 Select other desired options, and tap Finish.
- **10** In the **Dialing Locations** tab, specify your current location and phone type (most phone lines are tone). These settings will apply to all connections you create.

To start the connection, simply start using one of the following programs. Your 700 Series Computer will automatically begin connecting. Once connected, you can:

- Send and receive e-mail messages by using Inbox. Before you can use Inbox, you need to provide the information it needs to communicate with the e-mail server. For specific instructions, see "*Connecting Directly to an E-mail Server*" on page 72.
- Visit Web and WAP pages by using Pocket Internet Explorer. For more information, see "*Pocket Internet Explorer*" on page 62.
- Send and receive instant messages with MSN Messenger. For more information, see "*MSN Messenger*" on page 53.

Creating an Ethernet Connection to an ISP

- 1 You do not need to create a new connection on your 700 Series Computer. Instead, you must purchase a dock to enable on-board Ethernet or purchase a CompactFlash Ethernet card that is compatible with your 700 Series Computer.
- **2** Obtain the following information from your ISP:
 - User name
 - Password
 - Domain name
- **3** Insert the Ethernet card into your 700 Series Computer. For instructions on inserting and using the Ethernet card, see the owner's manual.



If using an on-board Ethernet, place your 700 Series Computer in a dock, tap Start \rightarrow Today, then look in the System Tray for the Ethernet icon (*shown left*). If not there, then tap the antenna icon for the NDISTRAY pop-up menu and select Built-in Ethernet from the menu.

4 The first time you insert the card, Network Settings will appear automatically so that you can configure the Ethernet card. Most networks use DHCP, so you should not have to change these settings unless your network administrator instructs you to do so. Tap OK. (If it does not appear or to change settings later, tap Start → Settings → the Connections tab → Network, tap the adapter you want to change, and then tap Properties.)



 If using an on-board Ethernet, then select Start → Settings → the Connections tab → Network Adapters. Select "NE2000 Compatible Ethernet Driver" from the list of adapters installed, then tap Properties to configure the Ethernet driver.

- **5** Connect the Ethernet card or dock to the network by using a network cable. For information, see your owner's manual.
- 6 Tap Start → Settings → the Connections tab → Connections. From the My network card connects to list, select "Internet."

To start the connection, simply start using one of the programs listed in the preceding section. Once connected, you can perform the same activities as listed in the preceding section.

Connecting to Work

If you have access to a network at work, you can send e-mail messages, view intranet pages, synchronize your 700 Series Computer, and possibly access the Internet. You can connect to work in one of two ways:

- Create a modem connection by using a RAS (Remote Access Server) account. Before you can create this modem connection, your network administrator will need to set up a RAS account for you. If this is the method you want to use, see "*Creating a Modem Connection to Work*" below. Your network administrator may also give you VPN settings.
- Use an Ethernet card and a net tap to connect to the network. If this is the method you want to use, see "*Creating an Ethernet Connection to Work*" on page 71.

Creating a Modem Connection to Work

1 Get the following information from your network administrator:

- Dial-up access telephone number
- User name
- Password
- Domain name
- TCP/IP settings
- **2** If your 700 Series Computer does not have a built-in modem, install a modem card.
- 3 Tap Start → Settings → the Connections tab → Connections. Under The Internet settings, select Internet Settings and tap Modify.
- 4 In the Modem tab, tap New.
- 5 Enter a name for the connection, such as "Company Connection."
- 6 In the Select a modem list, select your modem type. If your modem type does not appear, try reinserting the modem card. If you are using an external modem that is connected to your 700 Series Computer with a cable, select "Hayes Compatible on COM1."
- 7 You should not need to change any settings in Advanced. Most servers now use a dynamically-assigned address. If the server you are connecting to does not use a dynamically-assigned address, tap Advanced → the TCP/IP tab and then enter the address. When finished, tap OK → Next.

- 8 Enter the access phone number, and tap Next.
- 9 Select other desired options, and tap Finish.
- **10** In the **Dialing Locations** tab, specify your current location and phone type (most phone lines are tone). These settings will apply to all connections you create.

To start the connection, start using one of the following programs. Your 700 Series Computer will automatically begin connecting. Once connected, you can:

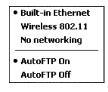
- Send and receive e-mail messages by using Inbox. Before you can use Inbox, you need to provide the information it needs to communicate with the e-mail server. For specific instructions, see "*Connecting Directly to an E-mail Server*" on page 72.
- Visit Internet or intranet Web or WAP pages via Pocket Internet Explorer.
- Send and receive instant messages with MSN Messenger. For more information, see "MSN Messenger" on page 53.
- Synchronize. For more information, see *ActiveSync Help* on the desktop computer.

Creating an Ethernet Connection to Work

- 1 You do not need to create a new connection on your 700 Series Computer. Instead, you must purchase a dock to enable on-board Ethernet or purchase a CompactFlash Ethernet card that is compatible with your 700 Series Computer.
- **2** Obtain the following information from your ISP:
 - User name
 - Password
 - Domain name
- **3** Insert the Ethernet card into your 700 Series Computer. For instructions on inserting and using the Ethernet card, see the owner's manual.



If using an on-board Ethernet, place your 700 Series Computer in a dock, tap Start → Today, then look in the System Tray for the Ethernet icon (shown left). If not there, then tap the antenna icon for the NDISTRAY pop-up menu and select Built-in Ethernet from the menu.



4 The first time you insert the card, Network Settings will appear automatically so that you can configure the Ethernet card. Most networks use DHCP, so you should not have to change these settings unless your network administrator instructs you to do so. Tap OK. (If it does not appear or to change settings later, tap Start → Settings → the Connections tab → Network, tap the adapter you want to change, and then tap Properties.)



Network Adapters

- If using an on-board Ethernet, then select Start → Settings → the Connections tab → Network Adapters. Select "NE2000 Compatible Ethernet Driver" from the list of adapters installed, then tap Properties to configure the Ethernet driver.
- **5** Connect the Ethernet card or dock to the network by using a network cable. For information, see your owner's manual.
- 6 To synchronize your 700 Series Computer, tap Start → ActiveSync. In the Tools menu, tap Options. → the PC tab, select Include PC when synchronizing remotely and connect to, and select your computer's name. Remote synchronization with a desktop computer will work only if a partnership is set up with that computer through ActiveSync and ActiveSync is set to allow remote connections. Other restrictions apply. For more information, see *ActiveSync Help* on the desktop computer.

To start the connection, simply start using one of the programs listed in the preceding section. Once connected, you can perform the same activities as listed in the preceding section.

Ending a Connection

To disconnect, do one of the following:



- When connected via dial-up or VPN, tap the **Connection** icon *(shown left)* on your navigation bar, and then tap End.
- When connected via cable or cradle, detach your 700 Series Computer from the cable or cradle.
- When connected via Infrared, move the 700 Series Computer away from the PC.
- When connected via a network (Ethernet) card, remove the card from your 700 Series Computer.

Connecting Directly to an E-mail Server

You can set up a connection to an e-mail server so that you can send and receive e-mail messages by using a modem or network connection and Inbox on your 700 Series Computer.



Note: The ISP or network must use a POP3 or IMAP4 e-mail server and an SMTP gateway.

You can use multiple e-mail services to receive your messages. For each email service you intend to use, first set up and name the e-mail service. If you use the same service to connect to different mailboxes, set up and name each mailbox connection.

Setting Up an E-mail Service

• In Inbox on your 700 Series Computer, tap Services → New Service. Follow the directions in the New Service wizard.

For an explanation of a screen, tap Start \rightarrow Help. When finished, to connect to your e-mail server, tap Services \rightarrow Connect. For more information on using the Inbox program, see "*Inbox: Sending and Receiving E-mail Messages*" on page 42.

Chapter 2 — Pocket PC 2002



There are multiple ways to get an application to your 700 Series Color Mobile Computer; just as there are multiple ways to package the application for delivery.

Packaging an Application

Use any of the following methods to package an application for installation:

- For very simple applications, the application itself might be the only file that needs to be delivered.
- It could be a directory structure that contains the application, supporting files like ActiveX controls, DLLs, images, sound files, and data files.
- Via a CAB file.

Consider either of the following when choosing a location into which to store your application:

- In the basic 700 Series Computer, there are no built-in storage options other than the Object Store. The Object Store is RAM that looks like a disk. Anything copied here will be deleted when a cold-boot is performed on the 700 Series Computer.
- If the optional SecureDigital or CompactFlash storage card is in the system, then consider this card the primary location for placing an applications install files. The following folders represent either card:
 - The SecureDigital storage card creates the "\SDMMC Disk" folder.
 - The CompactFlash storage card creates the "\Storage Card" folder.
- Files copied to either of these locations will be safe when a cold-boot is performed on a 700 Series Computer *providing the AutoRun system is installed onto the storage card.* You can find this system on the Recovery CD. Copying a CAB file to the "\CABFILES" folder on one of these cards will automatically extract that CAB file on every cold boot to ensure that your system is properly set up. See page 82 for more details on how this works.

Installing Applications

Consider any of the following options to get the package to the preferred location on your 700 Series Computer.

- Microsoft ActiveSync
- FTP Server (page 78)
- Application Manager in Unit Manager (page 78)
- SecureDigital or CompactFlash storage card (page 78)

Using Microsoft ActiveSync



Note: These instructions assume that the 700 Color Management Tools portion of the *700 Series Color Software Tools CD* was installed onto your desktop.

The Microsoft ActiveSync tool is located on the 700C Companion CD, which contains Microsoft products, such as Outlook and ActiveSync. See Chapter 2, "*Pocket PC 2002*," for information about this tool as provided by Microsoft Corporation.

This can be a serial, USB, Ethernet, InfraRed, or 802.11b ActiveSync connection. Files can then be copied using File Explorer on a PC or a laptop computer. This option is usually only good when updating a few 700 Series Computers.

These instructions assume that Microsoft ActiveSync had been installed onto your desktop computer and is up and running. If not, go to Chapter 2, "*Pocket PC 2002*," for an URL from which you can download the latest application.

- 1 Connect your 700 Series Computer to your desktop computer via an ActiveSync cable or IrDA.
- 2 Wait for a "Connected" message to appear in the Microsoft ActiveSync application to signal a connection to the 700 Series Computer. If necessary, select File → Get Connected to initiate a connection.

Microsoft Actives	Sync	
<u>File View Tools H</u>	elp	
Sync Stop	ails Explore Options	
Pocket_PC		
Connected Synchronized		
Information Type	Status	
🤊 Calendar	Synchronized	
6 Contacts	Synchronized	
🖗 Tasks	Synchronized	
Image: Favorite Image: State of the state of t	Synchronized	



3 Click **Explore** to access the Mobile Device directory on your 700 Series Computer.

- 4 From your desktop, select Start → Windows Explorer, then browse the applicable path for any of the system files needed for your 700 Series Computer *(listed with their paths)*. Select to highlight the appropriate file, right-click the file for a pop-up menu, then select Copy.
 - Base operating system files: "C:\Intermec\Intermec 700 Color Mgmt Tools\Drive Images"
 - CAB files: "C:\Intermec\Intermec 700 Color Mgmt Tools\Cab Files"
- **5** Within the Mobile Device directory, go to the directory where you want the files located on the 700 Series Computer, do a right-click for a popup menu, then select **Paste**.
- 6 When all of the files are pasted, perform a warm-boot on the 700 Series Computer. When the computer reboots, wait for the LED on the top left of your keypad to stop blinking. Tap Start → Programs → File Explorer to locate the newly copied executable files, then tap these files to activate their utilities.

Using the FTP Server

The 700 Series Computer has a built-in FTP Server that connects to a network via Ethernet or 802.11b. This "ftp"s to the IP address of the 700 Series Computer and places files. The benefit of using FTP is that a script can be created that will automate the process of copying files to the 700 Series Computer. This option is good for when a large number of 700 Series Computers need to be updated. See Chapter 7, "*Programming*," for more information.

Using the Application Manager in Unit Manager

This requires the 700 Series Computer to connect to the network via Ethernet or 802.11b. The process is still manual so it would take longer than the FTP method but it would still be a better option than ActiveSync where many 700 Series Computers need to be updated. The Unit Manager applications are available on the 700 Series Color Unit Manager CD-ROM. For more information, consult your Intermec sales representative.

Using a Storage Card

The following steps pertain to installing an application using a storage card.

Copying to a CompactFlash Card

Follow the steps below to install your application on the device using a CompactFlash storage card:

- 1 Suspend the 700 Series Color Mobile Computer and remove its CompactFlash drive, which holds a SanDisk CompactFlash storage card.
- **2** Using a CompactFlash Adapter card, place the CompactFlash Drive in your desktop PC card drive.

- **3** Create a subdirectory on the PCMCIA CompactFlash drive in which to store your application.
- **4** Add the autorun system to the storage card using the CEImager application. See the *Software Tools User's Manual* for information about CEImager.
- **5** Copy your application, data files, and all required DLLs and drivers to the subdirectory created on the CompactFlash drive.
- **6** Add your application to the AUTOUSER.DAT file on the "\Storage Card\2577" directory that contains the following statement, where *your directory* is the directory on the CompactFlash storage card where the application was installed, and *yourapp.exe* is the name of your application. Finish the "RUN=" statement with a carriage return line-feed combination. There may be multiple run statements in the file.

RUN=\<your directory>\<yourapp. exe>

- 7 Remove the CompactFlash drive from your desktop computer and reinstall it into the 700 Series Computer.
- **8** Warm-boot the 700 Series Computer to add these files to the Compact-Flash storage card.

If the AUTOUSER.DAT file is found and the "RUN=" statement is correct, then the task manager will launch and execute your program on startup.

Copying to a SecureDigital Storage Card

Do the same steps as for the CompactFlash storage Card, except replace the "\Storage Card\2577" directory with the "\SDMMC Disk\2577" directory.

Updating the System Software

You can use the Recovery CD to reinstall or update the operating system software on the 700 Series Color Computer. For more information, contact your Intermec sales representative.

Application Migration



Note: These instructions assume that the 700 Color Management Tools portion of the 700C Software Tools CD was installed onto your desktop and that a storage card has been added to the base configuration of the 700 Color Computer.

The following steps are required to ensure that the following will happen on a cold-boot:

- CAB files can be restored,
- applications will automatically start,
- and the registry will be restored.

Do the following for the cold-boot procedure:



Intermec CE Imager 1 From your desktop, double-click the Intermec CE Imager desktop icon to access the Intermec CEImager application. If this icon is not on your desktop, then double-click the CEIMAGER.EXE executable from the "C:\Intermec\Intermec 700 Color Mgmt Tools\Tools\CEImager" folder.

- 2 Click **Default** under **Components** List to activate the components.
- 3 Click (+) to expand the AutoRun System component, click (+) to expand the Destination Media option, then select *either* the Compact-Flash Card option or the SecureDigital Card option. *Do not select both* storage cards, as the AutoRun files copied will work for one storage card, but not work on the other storage card.

🦛 Intermec CEImager			х
Source Folder	Browse	<u>I</u> nstall E <u>x</u> it	
Components	<u>M</u> in	fault imum All one Selected 3K	
4			

- 4 Click Install to install the AUTORUN files onto the storage card.
- **5** Create a "\Cabfiles" folder on the storage card. Copy any CAB files that are to be extracted on every startup into this folder.
- **6** In the "\2577" directory, add your custom AUTOUSER.DAT file. See the *Recovery Help* for more information on how to set up an AUTOUSER.DAT file.
- 7 If you are using the RegFlushKey() API, the application must use a special API to make sure the registry is written to the appropriate card; or you can use the Utilities control panel applet, as follows:



a From the 700 Series Computer, tap Start \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow the System tab \rightarrow the Utilities icon \rightarrow the Registry Save tab.

Utilities

- **b** Tap Enable Registry Storage, then tap either of the following:
 - SD
 - To write the registry to the SecureDigital storage card.
 - CF

To write the registry to the CompactFlash storage card.

c Tap **ok** to save your entry and exit the **Utilities** control panel applet.

🔠 Start		€ 2:12	ok
Utilities			
Registry settings can be saved between cold boots to the selected media. The registry is saved during device resets or when applications use the RegFlushKey function.			
E	nable Registry	Storage	
	● 5D C) CF	
	habled, the real be restored on		
EI	nable RTC Rest	ore	
Dock Switch	Registry Save	Wakeup Mas	• •
		6	≝ ^



Note: If you are using a SecureDigital storage card, you must change any disk access from "Storage Card" to "SDMMC Disk."

- 8 Remove the storage card from the desktop PC and install the card into the 700 Series Color Computer.
- **9** Perform a cold-boot on the 700 Series Color Computer. Files will automatically install from the storage card upon reboot. Any calls to the RegFlushKey() API will automatically write the registry to the appropriate location.

When converting a 700 Series Monochrome Computer application to run on the 700 Series Color Computer, most APIs should work without changes. Below are a few exceptions:

- The 700 Series Monochrome Computer used the "\Storage Card" folder for nonvolatile storage. You may need to change the application to store data in a volatile location or onto the "SDMMC Disk" if a SecureDigital storage card is present in the system.
- If the application uses the RegFlushKey() API, it must first verify that the proper media is available in the system and call the special API mentioned in Step 7 on the previous page.
- If the application will be using the 700 Color switchable dock, use the API to set the proper port on the dock before communications.
- Some WAN radio options have changed. Review the WAN radio section to determine if any changes will be required in your application.
- The arrow and tab keys are swapped from the way they were on the 700 Series Monochrome Computers. Keyboard remapping is available on the 700 Series Color Computer if these keys need to be changed. See page 79 for more details.
- No special SDK is needed to compile applications for the Xscale processor. Targeting the SA1110 processor will create applications that run on the 700 Series Color Computer.

Cabinet File Installation

CAB files *(short for cabinet files)* are like .ZIP files, plus they register DLLs, create shortcuts, modify registry entries, and run custom set up programs. Tap a CAB file to extract that file or place the CAB file on one of the approved storage devices in the "\Cab Files" folder, then perform a warmboot on the 700 Series Computer. There are two methods available to extract a CAB file:

- Tap a CAB file to extract it. When using this method, the CAB file is automatically deleted when the extraction process is successful, *unless* the CAB file is set with the read-only attribute.
- Use the AUTOCAB method where all files are extracted when a coldboot is performed on the 700 Series Computer. This AutoCab application is on the Recovery CD, see its "*Recovery Help*" for more information.

Network Support

The 700 Series Color Mobile Computer can integrate up to three radios in a single unit, and will automatically install the appropriate software for radio use when the unit is powered on. The Intermec CORE application defaults to the most recently used module. If a module has not yet been used or set, CORE will default to the first module as listed alphabetically.

The following communication options on the 700 Series Computer provide wired and wireless connectivity:

- Onboard wired Ethernet (standard)
- Wireless Local Area Network (LAN) This 802.11b radio option provides up to 11 Mb/sec throughput.
- Wireless Wide Area Network (WAN) Includes support for GSM/GPRS and CDMA/1xRTT radios.
- Wireless Printing

This allows for cable-free communications with peripheral devices, such as printers, over a ten-meter range. This compatibility is provided via a Bluetooth qualified module by Socket Communications.

CORE

The Intermec Common Object Resource Environment (CORE) application provides a framework for various modules that let you configure and manage your Intermec products. These modules are software plug-ins that can be configuration tools, such as the 802.11b radio configuration module, or they can provide information on your environment, such as a battery life module.



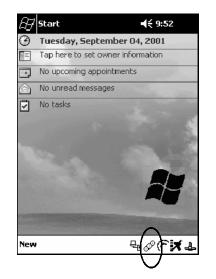
CORE is built into the operating system of every 700 Series Computer. On the 700 Series Computer, tap Start \rightarrow Programs \rightarrow the Intermec CORE icon to access this application.

CORE modules are collections of specific information. This information is usually related to a particular radio technology, but not always. Each module can display general and detailed information. Tap the **General** and **Details** tabs near the bottom to switch between general and detailed information. Note that not all modules will have detailed information.

To learn more about this application, see its online help. Tap Start \rightarrow Help from the menu to see the CORE online help.



Note: Once CORE is running, you can return to it by tapping its icon from the System Tray via the Today screen. Tap Start \rightarrow Today \rightarrow the Intermec CORE three-ring icon *(circled in the following illustration)*.



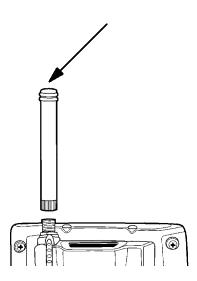
Network Adapters

Your 700 Series Computer can have up to three radios installed. The default network adapter or radio is dependent on what card is inserted in your 700 Computer. Below are the the network adapters that exist as of this publication. See the Developer's Support web site for the latest information on network adapters for your unit.

- Ethernet Communications (LAN9000) page 86.
- 802.11b Radios (802.11b Wireless LAN driver) page 87.
- WWAN (Wireless WAN) page 110.
- Wireless Printing (PAN) page 120.

Note that the tip of the antenna attached to your 700 Series Computer is color-coded to identify its radio type. Refer to the following to determine your radio type:

- Green 802.11b diversity
- Red CDMA/GPRS US/Canada
- Blue GPRS International



Ethernet Communications

Follow the steps below to start Ethernet communications on the 700 Series Computer. If your system does not contain an 802.11b radio, then Ethernet networking using DHCP will be selected as the default.



When "Built-in Ethernet" is selected from the NDISTRY pop-up menu, then the antenna shown to the left will appear in the System Tray. When "No networking" is selected, then this icon will appear with a red "X" above it.

٠	Built-in Ethernet
	Wireless 802.11
	No networking
•	AutoFTP On
	AutoFTP Off



From the 700 Series Computer, tap Start \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow the Connections tab \rightarrow Network Adapters to access the network connections for this unit. Make the changes necessary for your network, then tap ok when finished.

🛃 Settings	📢 12:03 🛛 🕕
Network Adapters	
Adapters installed:	
802.11b Wireless LAN LAN9000	
Adapters, such as wireles (Ethernet) cards, connect to a network.	
	Properties
	× 🖾



Note: "LAN9000" is for Ethernet and "802.11b Wireless LAN" is for 802.11b radios.

802.11b Communications

The 700 Series Computer can integrate the 802.11b radio module along with either the GSM/GPRS or the CDMA/1xRTT radio and the Wireless Printing option. The 802.11b radio module accommodates any Wireless LAN (WLAN) requirements, such as using WLAN access points for cross-docking or load-planning applications.



When "Wireless 802.11" is selected via the NDISTRY pop-up menu, then the antenna shown to the left will appear in the System Tray.

Built-in Ethernet
Wireless 802.11
No networking
 AutoFTP On
AutoFTP Off



To start 802.11b communications on the 700 Series Computer, tap Start \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow the System tab \rightarrow the Wireless Network icon to access the Profile Wizard for the 802.11b radio module. The Profile Wizard defaults to the Profiles page.

Profiles

Use the Profiles page to add, edit, or delete multiple networking environments for this 802.11b radio. To add a profile from this screen, enter up to 32 alphanumeric characters in the **Profile** field, then tap **Add**. See "*Basic*" on page 89 and "*Security*" on page 90 for more information.

Leave Use Profile Name for SSID checked for the SSID (or Network Name) to use this profile name. If this is cleared (check mark removed), the SSID will default to using the factory-assigned "INTERMEC" network name.

😰 Profile Wizard 🛛 📢 1:03 🐽
Profiles Import/Export Scan List
Profile:
Use Profile Name for SSID OK Cancel

• To add a profile:

Tap Add, enter up to 32 alphanumeric characters to name this profile if you have not already entered a description in the Profiles page, configure the basic and security information for this profile, then click **Done** to configure its basic and security information.

• Leave Use Profile Name for SSID checked for the SSID to use this assigned profile name. If this is cleared (check mark removed), the SSID will default to using the factory-assigned "INTERMEC" network name. Go to the next page to continue.

∂ Profile Wizard	📢 1:13 🛛 🚯
Please enter a name for yo Sample Profile	ur new profile:
Use Profile Name for SS	ID .
Done	Cancel
	₩

• To edit a profile:

Select an existing profile from the **Profile** drop-down list, tap **Edit**, make the changes needed for this profile (starting in the next paragraph), then tap **OK** to return to the Profiles page.

• To delete a profile:

Select a profile from the **Profile** drop-down list, tap **Delete**, then tap **Yes** to remove the selected profile.

Basic

Use the Basic page to set the network type and radio channel for this profile. Click **OK** to return to the Profiles page.

- Network type:
 - Tap the drop-down list to select either Infrastructure or Ad-hoc.
- SSID (Network Name):

This assumes the profile name when Use Profile Name for SSID is checked on the previous screen, *unless another name is entered in this field*. If you want to connect to the next available network or are not familiar with the network name, enter "ANY" in this field. Consult your LAN administrator for network names.

• Channel:

If "Ad-hoc" were selected as the network type, then this is enabled. Tap the drop-down list to select a channel, from 1-15, through which to handle connections (*default is 3*).

• Enable Power Management:

Check this box to conserve battery power *(default)*, or clear this box to disable this feature.

😰 Profile Wizard 🛛 📢 5:06 🐽
Basic Security Advanced
Network type:
Infrastructure
SSID (Network Name):
Sample Profile
Channel:
Enable Power Management
OK Cancel
E

Security

Use the Security page to set this profile as read-only or to enable WEP (Wired Equivalent Privacy) encryption. Click **OK** to return to the Profiles page. The following securities are available from the **Security Method** drop-down list. *Note that the last three methods are available if you have purchased the security package. Contact your Intermec Representative for more information.*

- 802.11 WEP Encryption (next page)
- 802.1x TLS (page 92)
- 802.1x TTLS (page 93)
- LEAP (page 93)

Profile Wizard 📢 2:17 👩	Ş
Basic Security Advanced	
Security Method:	
OK Cancel	
	•

802.11 WEP Encryption:

WEP keys are only needed if they are expected by your clients. There are two types available: 64-bit (5-character strings, 12345) *(default)* and 128-bit (13-character strings, 1234567890123). These can be entered as either ASCII (12345) or Hex (0x3132333435).

To enter WEP keys, select "802.11 WEP Encryption" from the Security Method drop-down list. Select a data transmission key from the Data TX Key drop-down list near the bottom of this screen, then enter the encryption key for that data transmission in the appropriate Key # field.

😰 Profile Wizard 🛛 📢 2:18 🐽
Basic Security Advanced
Security Method:
Key 1:
Key 2:
Key 3:
Key 4: Data TX Key: Key 1 ▼
Data TX Key: Key 1 👻
OK Cancel

802.1x TLS (Transport Layer Security):

TLS is a protocol that ensures privacy between communicating applications and their users on the Internet. To use this protocol, select "802.1x TLS" from the **Security Method** drop-down list, then enter the following:

- Client Key File: Enter the file location where the certificate for your identity is stored.
- **Password**: Enter the password for the certificate in this field.
- Supplicant ID: Enter the user ID associated with this certificate.
- Server Cert CN (*Certificate Common Name*): Enter the common name of your authentication server.
- CA List *(Certificate Authority)*: Enter the file location, or path, of the server certificates.

🗑 Profile Wizar	d 📢 5:34 🐽
Basic Security	Advanced
Security Method	:
802.1× TLS	T
Client Key File:	dows\ClientCert.pem
Password:	****
Supplicant ID:	anonymous
Server Cert CN:	Intermec Technologi
CA List:	\windows\root.pem
	OK Cancel

802.1x TTLS (EAP-Tunneled TLS):

To use this protocol, select "802.1x TTLS" from the Security Method drop-down list, then enter the following:

• Username:

Enter your user name for this security protocol.

- **Password**: Enter your password for this security protocol.
- Supplicant ID: Enter "anonymous" unless your administrator indicates otherwise.
- Server Cert CN (*Certificate Common Name*): Enter the common name of your authentication server.
- CA List:
 - Enter the file location, or path, of the server certificates.

🔠 Profile Wizard	d 📢 📢 5:35 🐽
Basic Security	Advanced
Security Method: 802.1x TTLS	
Username:	anonymous
Password:	****
Supplicant ID:	anonymous
Server Cert CN:	Intermec Technologie
CA List:	\windows\root.pem
	Save Password
	Cancel
	₩

LEAP (*Cisco Wireless EAP (Extensible Authentication Protocol)*): Enter your unique user name and password to use this protocol.

😰 Profile Wizard 🛛 📢 5:37 🐽
Basic Security Advanced Security Method:
LEAP
Username: anonymous
Password: ********
OK Cancel

Advanced

Use this page to secure the configuration for this profile or to make all fields read-only.

• Make Profile Read-Only:

Check this box, then enter and reenter a password to "lock" or render "read-only" all configurations for this profile. To reverse this step, clear the check box, then enter the password assigned with the "read-only" status.

• Certificates:

If "802.1x TLS," "802.1x TTLS," or "LEAP" were enabled via the **Se-curity** tab, then this button will appear. Tap this button to configure the available certificates. See "*Certificates*" on the next page for more information.

😰 Profile Wizard 🛛 📢 2:59 🐽
Basic Security Advanced
Make Profile Read-Only
Certificates
OK Cancel

Certificates

Use this page to view, modify, or remove certificates assigned to your particular security method. Note that you can also access this page by tapping Start \rightarrow certificates from the Today screen.

• CA Name/IP:

Enter a valid CA name or IP address assigned to the certificate in question. This allows you to enroll the certificate or to browse for its latest information.

Enroll File Name:

Enter the file name of the certificate to be enrolled.

• Store Location:

Enter the path where the certificate is to be stored within your 700 Series Computer.

• Enroll:

Tap this to assign the file entered in Enroll File Name to the location specified in Store Location.

• CA Vert:

Tap this to view the contents of the certificate via the Internet Explorer.

• View:

Tap this to view information about the certificate, such as to whom this certificate was issued, who issued the certificate, and the span of time the certificate is valid.

• Remove:

Select a file from the list, then tap this button to delete that file.

<i>B</i> Certificates	√ € 3:00 O ¢
CA Name/IP:	
Enroll File Name:	client.pem
Store Location:	\Windows
\Windows\rando \Windows\root.p	
Enroll CA C	ert <u>V</u> iew <u>R</u> emove
	_ _

Import/Export

Use this page to send a profile or to retrieve a profile to or from another location within your 700 Series Computer.

🔠 Profile Wizard	-(; 1:50 🚯
Profiles Import/Export Sc	an List
Export profile to file: Sample Profile	Export
Press 'Import' to import a profile from another file:	Import
ОК	Cancel
	E

• To export a profile:

Select to highlight a profile, then tap **Export**. Select from the drop-down lists, the folder, type of files, and location within the folder where the profile is to go, tap **OK** to export the profile, tap **ok** to close the confirmation screen, then tap **OK** again to exit the Profile Wizard.

BProfile	Wizard	◀€ 1:51
Save As		
Name:	Sample Profile	
Folder:	Business	-
Type:	MobileLAN card P	Profiles (*. 👻
Location:	Main memory	-
	ОК	Cancel
		₩^

• To import a profile:

Tap **Import** to access the Open screen, from the drop-down lists, select a folder and file type, then tap a profile from the list provided. Tap **ok** to close the confirmation screen, then tap **OK** again to exit the Profile Wizard.

Open	
Folder: All Folders	- Cancel
Type: MobileLAN card Pro	ofiles (*.prf) 🔻
Name 🔺 🛛 Folder	Date
🕅 Sample Profile	9/4 8:57
Sample Profile Business	9/4 8:55
	

Scan List

Use this Scan List page to monitor network connections, and if lost, to attempt to reestablish connections with these networks.

Selected Profile

Select this option to use the profile defined in the Profiles page, then tap **OK** to exit the Profile Wizard. When connections are lost, attempts will be made to connect to the specified profile.

Profile Wizard 📢 1:04 🐽
Profiles Import/Export Scan List
When configuring the radio, I would like to use the:
Selected Profile
🗍 🗍 Scan List
OK Cancel
<u>^</u> ⊞

Scan List

Use this option to select a number of profiles with which to establish connections. When connections are lost, attempts will be made to contact each of the profiles listed, in the order they appear in the list.

- 1 Tap this option, then tap Edit Scan List.
- 2 Select profiles from the Available Profiles drop-down list, then tap Add to include each selection in the Scan List.
- **3** To arrange the hierarchy of profiles, tap to select a profile, then tap either **Move Up** or **Move Down** to move each profile. To remove a profile from the list, tap to select that profile, then tap **Delete**.
- **4** Click either **ok** or **Close** to return to the Scan List page, then click **OK** to exit the Profile Wizard.

Profile Wizard	4 € 6:15 🛛 🕢
Available Profiles	
adnet 👻	Add
Scan List:	
adnet AUSTINIJ	Move Up
any	Move Down
IAN	
BIGEYE secure_test	Delete
Network connections will be the order that they are list	
Close]

Network Selection APIs

The Network Selection APIs allow the user to change network adapter configuration programmatically. Both drivers support the same IOCTL function numbers for loading and unloading the drivers.

Loading and unloading of the 802.11b driver is performed by the FWV1: device in the system by performing DeviceIOControl() calls to the driver.

Loading and unloading of the driver for the built-in Ethernet adapter is performed by the SYI1: device in the system by performing DeviceIO-Control() calls to the driver.

- For loading an NDIS driver associated with an adapter, the IOCTL is IOCTL_LOAD_NDIS_MINIPORT.
- For unloading NDIS drivers associated with an adapter the IOCTL is IOCTL_UNLOAD_NDIS_MINIPORT.

```
#include <winioctl.h>
#i ncl ude "sysi o. h"
void DoLoad(int nDevice) {
   LPTSTR devs[] = { _T("SYI1:"), _T("FW1:") };
   HANDLE hLoaderDev;
   DWORD bytesReturned;
   hLoaderDev = CreateFile(devs[nDevice], GENERIC_READ|GENERIC_WRITE, 0,
   NULL, OPEN_EXI STI NG, O, NULL);
   if (hLoaderDev != INVALID_HANDLE_VALUE) {
      if (!DeviceIoControl ( hLoaderDev, IOCTL_LOAD_NDIS_MINIPORT, NULL, -1, NULL, 0,
      &bytesReturned, NULL)){
         MessageBox(NULL, TEXT("SYSIO IoControl Failed"), TEXT("Network
         loader"), MB_ICONHAND);
         if (hLoaderDev! = I NVALID_HANDLE_VALUE) CloseHandle(hLoaderDev);
         hLoaderDev = INVALID_HANDLE_VALUE; // bad handle
      }else {
         CloseHandle(hLoaderDev);
      }
  }
}
void DoUnload(int nDevice) {
   LPTSTR devs[] = { _T("SYI1:"), _T("FW1:") };
   HANDLE hLoaderDev;
   DWORD bytesReturned;
   hLoaderDev = CreateFile(devs[nDevice], GENERIC_READ|GENERIC_WRITE, 0,
   NULL, OPEN_EXI STI NG, O, NULL);
   if (hLoaderDev != INVALID_HANDLE_VALUE) {
      if (!DeviceIoControl ( hLoaderDev, IOCTL_UNLOAD_NDIS_MINIPORT, NULL, -1, NULL, 0,
      &bytesReturned, NULL)){
         MessageBox(NULL, TEXT("SYSI0 IoControl Failed"), TEXT("Network
         loader"), MB_ICONHAND);
         if (hLoaderDev! = I NVALID_HANDLE_VALUE) CloseHandle(hLoaderDev);
         hLoaderDev = INVALID_HANDLE_VALUE; // bad handle
      }else {
         CloseHandle(hLoaderDev);
      }
  }
}
```

The API provided by Intermec Technologies exposes a limited set of routines that allows a programmer to access and affect the 802.11b network interface card from within their application. The routines provided will also read/write values to the CE registry that pertain to the 802.11b radio driver. By using the provided functions, a programmer can alter the 802.11b parameters of Network Name (SSID), WEP Keys, Infrastructure Modes, Radio Channel, and Power Management Modes. A programmer can also retrieve network connect status and signal strength indication from the RF network card.

The API is contained within the 80211API.DLL file that should be present in any load that has the 802.11b networking installed.

• NETWLAN.DLL

This file is the 802.11b driver. It will be present in all 700 CE loads that use the 802.11b network interface card.

• 80211API.DLL

This file is an Intermec authored file that provides the programmer with a set of API calls to configure or monitor status of the 802.11b network.

• MOD80211.DLL

The CORE module for the 802.11b NIC. It provides the 802.11b status information displayed when the CORE application is running.

• 80211CONF.EXE

This is the "Control Panel" for configuring the 802.11b network parameters. Note that it is an EXE file and is actually called by CPL802.CPL (see below). It is also called by the CORE application when the "Configuration" button is pressed.

• CPL802.CPL

A control panel application that does nothing but call 80211CONF.EXE.

• 80211SCAN.EXE

Internally manages the Scan List activity.

The 80211API.DLL supports an unlimited number of radio configuration profiles. These profiles are the same as those set by the **Wireless Network** control panel applet that runs on the Windows CE unit. You can configure different 802.11b profiles and switch between them using the 802.11 API. See the ConfigureProfile() function on page 106 for more information.

Function Summary

Below are functions available for the 700 Series Color Computer when enabled with the 802.11b radio module.

RadioConnect()

Connects to the available radio. Use this function if you plan on using a lot of API calls that talk directly to the radio.

Syntax: UINT RadioConnect();

Parameters: None.

Returns: ERROR_SUCCESS when successful, otherwise ERR_CONNECT_FAILED.

RadioDisconnect()

Cleans up the connection from the RadioConnect() function after an application closes.

Syntax: UINT RadioDisconnect();

Parameters: None.

Returns: ERROR_SUCCESS when successful, otherwise ERR_CONNECT_FAILED.

GetMac()

Gets the radio MAC address.

Syntax: UINT GetMac(TCHAR *);

Parameters: Pointer to a character array, which is populated with MAC addresses.

Returns: ERROR_SUCCESS when successful, ERR_QUERY_FAILED when the query failed, or ERR_CONNECT_FAILED if a connection with the radio failed.

GetBSSID()

Gets the associated access point name, the BSSID.

- Syntax: UINT GetBSSID(TCHAR *);
- Parameters: Pointer to a character array, which is populated with the current BSSID.
 - Returns: ERROR_SUCCESS when successful, ERR_QUERY_FAILED when the query failed, or ERR_CONNECT_FAILED if a connection with the radio failed

GetSSID()

Gets the current SSID (network name).

- Syntax: UINT GetSSID(TCHAR *);
- Parameters: Pointer to a character array, which is populated with the current SSID.
 - Returns: ERROR_SUCCESS when successful, ERR_QUERY_FAILED when the query failed, or ERR_CONNECT_FAILED if a connection with the radio failed.

GetLinkSpeed()

Retrieves the current link speed of the radio connection.

Syntax: UINT GetLinkSpeed(int &);

Parameters: & References an integer.

Returns: ERROR_SUCCESS when successful, ERR_QUERY_FAILED when the query failed, or ERR_CONNECT_FAILED if a connection with the radio failed.

GetNetworkType()

Retrieves the network type.

- Syntax: UINT GetNetworkType(ULONG &);
- - **Returns:** ERROR_SUCCESS when successful, ERR_QUERY_FAILED when the query failed, or ERR_CONNECT_FAILED if a connection with the radio failed.

GetTXPower()

Gets the current TX power of the radio in milliwatts.

Syntax: UINT GetTXPower(ULONG &);

Parameters: ♂ References a ULONG value, populated with one of the following in milliwatts (mW):

NDIS_POWER_LEVEL_63	63 mW.
NDIS_POWER_LEVEL_30	30 mW.
NDIS_POWER_LEVEL_15	15 mW.
NDIS_POWER_LEVEL_5	5 mW.
NDIS_POWER_LEVEL_1	1 mW.
NDIS_POWER_LEVEL_UNKNO	OWN
Unknown Value or Error.	

Returns: ERROR_SUCCESS when successful, ERR_QUERY_FAILED when the query failed, or ERR_CONNECT_FAILED if a connection with the radio failed.

GetNetworkMode()

Retrieves the network mode.

Syntax: UINT GetNetworkMode (ULONG &);

 Parameters: 𝔅
 References a ULONG value, populated with one of the following: NDIS_NET_MODE_IBSS
 802.11 Ad-Hoc Mode.

 NDIS_NET_MODE_ESS
 802.11 Infrastructure Mode.

 NDIS_NET_MODE_UNKNOWN
 Unknown Value or Error.

 NDIS_NET_AUTO_UNKNOWN
 Automatic Selection. Use of this option is not recommended.

Returns: ERROR_SUCCESS when successful, ERR_QUERY_FAILED when the query failed, or ERR_CONNECT_FAILED if a connection with the radio failed.

SetNetworkMode()

Sets the radio and updates the CE registry.

- Syntax: UINT SetNetworkMode(ULONG &);
- Parameters: ♂ References a ULONG value, populated with one of the values defined in GetNetworkMode().
 - Returns: ERROR_SUCCESS when successful, ERR_QUERY_FAILED when the query failed, or ERR_CONNECT_FAILED if a connection with the radio failed.

AddWep()

Adds a WEP key to the radio configuration.

- Syntax: UINT AddWep(ULONG 1, BOOL 2, TCHAR * 3);
- Parameters:ULONG
BOOLPointer that identifies what key to be set.BOOL
TCHARSpecifies whether the key being set is the default TX key.Pointer that specifies the key data either in hex (string
lengths of 10 or 26) or ASCII (string lengths of 5 or 13).
 - **Returns:** ERROR_SUCCESS when successful, ERR_QUERY_FAILED when the query failed, or ERR_CONNECT_FAILED if a connection with the radio failed.

GetRSSI()

Sets the current RSSI (Received Signal Strength Indication).

- Syntax: UINT GetRSSI (ULONG &);
- Parameters: & References a ULONG value.
 - **Returns:** ERROR_SUCCESS when successful, ERR_QUERY_FAILED when the query failed, or ERR_CONNECT_FAILED if a connection with the radio failed.

GetAssociationStatus()

Gets the current connection, or association status.

- Syntax: UINT GetAssociationStatus(ULONG &);
- Parameters:&References a ULONG value, a current connection status as follows:
NDIS_RADIO_ASSOCIATED
NDIS_RADIO_SCANNINGRadio is associated w/access point.
Radio is scanning for network.
 - **Returns:** ERROR_SUCCESS when successful, ERR_QUERY_FAILED when the query failed, or ERR_CONNECT_FAILED if a connection with the radio failed.

GetWepStatus()

Gets the current WEP status.

- Syntax: UINT GetWepStatus (ULONG &);
- Parameters:
 ☆
 References a ULONG status value which include the following: NDIS_RADIO_WEP_ENABLED
 WEP is currently enabled.

 NDIS_RADIO_WEP_DISABLED
 WEP is currently disabled.

 NDIS_RADIO_WEP_ABSENT
 WEP key is absent.

 NDIS_RADIO_WEP_NOT_SUPPORTED
 WEP is not supported.
 - **Returns:** ERROR_SUCCESS when successful, ERR_QUERY_FAILED when the query failed, or ERR_CONNECT_FAILED if a connection with the radio failed.

GetAuthenticationMode()

Gets the current authentication mode.

- Syntax: UINT GetAuthenticationMode(ULONG &);

Returns: ERROR_SUCCESS when successful, ERR_QUERY_FAILED when the query failed, or ERR_CONNECT_FAILED if a connection with the radio failed.

SetAuthenticationMode()

Sets the radio authentication mode with a value defined in the GetAuthenticationMode() function.

- Syntax: UINT SetAuthenticationMode(ULONG);
- **Parameters:** Passes in a ULONG set to one of the values as defined in GetAuthenticationMode().
 - **Returns:** ERROR_SUCCESS when successful, ERR_QUERY_FAILED when the query failed, or ERR_CONNECT_FAILED if a connection with the radio failed.

SetChannel()

Sets the radio channel, ranging from 1 to 14.

- Syntax: UINT SetChannel(USHORT);
- **Parameters:** USHORT set to a desired channel (1-14).
 - **Returns:** ERROR_SUCCESS when successful, ERR_QUERY_FAILED when the query failed, or ERR_CONNECT_FAILED if a connection with the radio failed.

EnableWep()

Enables or disables WEP encryption.

- Syntax: UINT EnableWep(BOOL);
- **Parameters:** Set to TRUE (0) to enable WEP encryption or FALSE (1) to disabled WEP encryption.
 - **Returns:** ERROR_SUCCESS when successful, ERR_QUERY_FAILED when the query failed, or ERR_CONNECT_FAILED if a connection with the radio failed.

GetPowerMode()

Gets the current power management mode of the radio.

- Syntax: UINT GetPowerMode (ULONG &);
- Parameters: ♂ References a ULONG value which include the following current radio power management mode:
 - NDIS_RADIO_POWER_MODE_CAM
 - Continuous Access Mode (uses most power).
 - NDIS_RADIO_POWER_MODE_MAX
 - Maximum Power Savings.
 - NDIS_RADIO_POWER_MODE_PSP

Power Saving Mode, best balance of power and performance.

NDIS_RADIO_POWER_UNKNOWN

Unknown mode reported or error.

Returns: ERROR_SUCCESS when successful, ERR_QUERY_FAILED when the query failed, or ERR_CONNECT_FAILED if a connection with the radio failed.

SetSSID()

Passes the desired SSID (network name).

- Syntax: UINT SetSSID(TCHAR *);
- **Parameters:** Pointer to a character array that contains the desired SSID.
 - Returns: ERROR_SUCCESS when successful, ERR_QUERY_FAILED when the query failed, or ERR_CONNECT_FAILED if a connection with the radio failed.

	isOrinoco()
	Confirms whether the present radio is an ORiNOCO radio.
Syntax:	UINT isOrinoco();
Parameters:	None.
Returns:	TRUE when an ORiNOCO radio. FALSE when other than an ORiNOCO radio.
	EncryptWepKeyForRegistry() Encrypts a key for registry storage. Requires TCHAR pointers for a des- tination and a source.
Syntax:	UINT EncryptWepKeyForRegistry(TCHAR * <i>szDest</i> , TCHAR * <i>szSource</i>);
Parameters:	szDestString for the destination.szSourceString for the source.
Returns:	ERROR_SUCCESS when successful, ERR_QUERY_FAILED when the query failed, or ERR_CONNECT_FAILED if a connection with the radio failed.
	SetRTSThreshold() Sets the radio RTS (Request To Send) threshold.
Syntax:	UINT SetRTSThreshold (USHORT &);
Parameters:	
Returns:	None.
	GetRTSThreshold() Gets the radio RTS threshold.
Syntax:	UINT GetRTSThreshold (USHORT &);
Parameters:	 References a USHORT value.
Returns:	None.
	ConfigureProfile() If using the Intermec 802.11b Profile Management system, you can pro- gram the API to configure the radio to a specific profile by passing the pro- file name.
Syntax:	UINT ConfigureProfile (TCHAR *);
Parameters:	Pointer to a string that contains the name of the profile to be activated.
Returns:	None.

StartScanList()

If a scan list is configured, this will start the API looking for a network on that scan list and configuring the radio appropriately. This call can take a long time to process.

Syntax: UINT StartScanList();

Parameters: None.

Returns: None.

802.11b Radio CORE Module

The 802.11b radio CORE module displays helpful information about the 802.11b radio option built into your 700 Series Computer.

Note that you can configure the 802.11b radio module from this CORE application. Select **Configure** \rightarrow **Configure** 802.11 CF from the bottom menu bar to access the Profile Wizard application. Information about this application starts on page 87.

Select Modules \rightarrow Intermec 802.11 CF Help for more information on the contents of this CORE module.

General

Below are descriptions and meanings for each piece of information provided via the **General** tab, reading from top to bottom starting on the left.

Intermec 802.11 CF ESS 802.11 Station	Antenna: Diversity
Adapter MAC: 00-02-83-AE-3E-10	AP Mac: 00-00-00-00-00-00
Scanning	IP: DHCP 169.254.156.192
Encryption: Disabled (Open)	Power: Always On
Link: 11 Mbps TX Power: 63 mW Signal: -100 dBm	History
General Details	

• ESS 802.11 Station:

This identifies the type of network to which you are attached, either an ESS (Embedded Security Subsystem) Station, or Ad-hoc.

• Adapter MAC:

This identifies the MAC address for this 802.11b adapter.

• Scanning:

Status of association. When connected to a network, this changes to "Connected to NET" with NET being the name of the network to which you are connected.

• Encryption:

This indicates whether WEP encryption is "Enabled" or "Disabled (Open)." See page 90 for more information.

• Link:

This indicates the speed at which a connection is made.

• TX Power:

This shows the speed (in milliwatts) at which transmissions are made.

• Signal:

This identifies the radio signal strength (in dBm).

• Antenna:

This identifies the antenna being used with the assigned profile.

• AP Mac:

This identifies the MAC address of the access point to which this 700 Series Computer is connected.

• IP:

This provides the IP address which can be set as either DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) or statically.

• Power:

This indicates the power status of this 700 Series Computer: "Always On" is the default.



• History:

This bar graph displays an active history of this radio module's quality of connections.



• Friendly Indicator:

If the radio stack is loaded, then all three dots are filled. These dots are left empty if the stack is not loaded. These dots do vary based on the CORE application's perception of the overall connection quality.

Details

Below are descriptions and meanings for each piece of information provided via the **Details** tab, reading from top to bottom.

	4 € 3:04 🗴
Attach-Roam Cnt:	1
Scanlist: Watchdog Status:	Disabled Running
Supplicant:	Stopped
General Details	
CORE Modules Coni	figure 🖂 🔺

• Attach-Roam Cnt:

This includes the number of new associations made during the current session, including any found roaming.

• Scanlist:

This indicates whether the Scan List option was enabled or disabled. See page 97 for more information.

• Watchdog Status:

This monitors the activity of the Scan List: "Running" or "Stopped."

• Supplicant:

This monitors the 802.1x security activity on the client: "Running" or "Stopped."

WWAN Radio Options

The 700 Series Computer can integrate either the GSM/GPRS or the CDMA/1xRTT radio along with the 802.11b radio and the Wireless Printing option. The WWAN radio option accommodates any Wireless WAN requirements, such as taking the 700 Series Computer off the premises in a delivery vehicle to cover a much larger area.

GSM/GPRS

The GSM (Global System for Mobile communications) and GPRS (General Packet Radio Service) wireless infrastructure increases voice capacity, enables personalized "user-aware" services, and creates networking efficiencies to help wireless service providers drive reduced operating costs.

- GSM is an open, nonproprietary system. One of its great strengths is the international roaming capability. This provides seamless and samestandardized same-number contactability world-wide. GSM satellite roaming has extended service access to areas with unavailable terrestrial coverage.
- GPRS is the high-speed data evolution of GSM. GPRS supports Internet Protocol (IP), enabling access to Internet and intranet content and applications from GPRS wireless devices. The anticipated data rate for GPRS is 115 Kbps and throughput rates of 30-60 Kbps have been achieved initially. This high speed capability enables vehicle applications to become real-time and to use the Internet for access to corporate data or information in the form of traffic or navigation.

CDMA/1xRTT SB555

Code Division Multiple Access (CDMA) is a form of "spread-spectrum," a family of digital communication techniques used in military applications for years. The core principle of spread-spectrum is the use of noise-like carrier waves, and, as the name implies, bandwidths much wider than that required for simple point-to-point communication at the same data rate.

- 1XRTT, the first phase of CDMA2000, is designed to support up to 144 KB per second packet data transmission and to double the voice capacity of current generation CDMA networks.
- SB555 Embedded Module, from Sierra Wireless, provides complete wireless functionality and integrates easily into the most compact and slender mobile applications with its small flexible design. The SB555 offers maximum coverage and access to entire CDMA networks.

WAN Radio CORE Module

The WAN radio CORE module displays helpful information about either the GSM/GPRS radio or the CDMA/1xRTT radio option built into your 700 Series Computer. *The following illustrations are for a GSM/GPRS GEM350X radio.*

General

Below are descriptions and meanings for each piece of information provided via the **General** tab, reading from top to bottom starting on the left. *The information applies to both the GSM/GPRS and the CDMA/1xRTT radio modules unless otherwise indicated.*

	4 € 6:20 🗴	
WAN Radio Module		
Network Type: GSM-GPRS	f/w: C29TB01 h/w:	
IWS	Serial Status: Serial com OK	
Registered on home network	Xircom GEM3503 GSM-GPRS	
Radio ESN: 004400012430220	Band: 1900 MHz	
RSSI: -91 dBm	ļ	
BER: <0.2%	History	
General Details		
CORE Modules Configure 🔤 📥		

• Network Type:

This is the network type which would list either "GSM-GPRS" or "CDMA-1XRTT." *Scatternets are not supported.*

- IWS (GSM/GPRS) or Sprint PCS Network (CDMA/1xRTT): This lists the name of the wireless network provider, such as T-Mobile, Voicestream, AT&T Wireless, etc. "IWS" is short for the Iowa Wireless Service carrier.
- Registered on home network:

If the WAN radio module has registered with a service provider network, then one of the following will appear:

- *Registered on home network*: The radio module is registered on its "home" network.
- *Registered on roamed network*: The radio module is registered on another service provider's network.
- *Radio Not Registered*: There is no network within range of this radio module.
- Radio ESN:

This displays the Electronic Serial Number (ESN) assigned to this radio module or lists "Unavailable" if a number cannot be read from the radio. • RSSI:

This displays the Received Signal Strength Indicator (RSSI) frequency or lists "Unavailable" if there is no signal or the signal cannot be retrieved from the radio module.

• **BER** (GSM/GPRS GEM 350X, CDMA/1xRTT):

This shows the Bit Error Rate (BER), the percentage of bits with errors divided by the total number of bits transmitted, received, or processed over a given period of time.

• f/w:

This identifies the firmware version, if available.

• h/w:

This identifies the hardware version, if available.

• Serial Status:

This indicates whether serial communications passed ("Serial com OK") or failed ("Serial com FAIL") in its last transaction. A status of "Serial com FAIL" typically indicates that the 700 Series Computer is unable to establish communication with the radio module installed within.

- Xircom GEM3503 (GSM/GPRS), Siemens MC45 (GSM/GPRS), or Sierra Wireless SB555 (CDMA/1xRTT): This identifies the product name for this radio module.
- **Band** (*GSM/GPRS*) or **Channel** (*CDMA/1xRTT*): This identifies the bandwidth or channel available for this radio module, if any.



• History:

This bar graph displays an active history of this radio module's quality of connections.



• Friendly Indicator:

Usually indicates the signal strength for this radio module. Three filled dots indicate a high quality or strong signal. Three empty dots indicate that the signal is out of range or there is no signal detected.

Details

Below are descriptions and meanings for each piece of information provided via the **Details** tab, reading from top to bottom. Most of this is similar to what is shown under the **General** tab. *The information applies to both the GSM/GPRS and the CDMA/1xRTT radio modules unless otherwise indicated.*

	4 € 6:21 🗴	
GSM-GPRS WAN		
Serial Status:	Serial com OK	
Manufacturer:	XIRCOM, AN INTEL	
Model:	GSM/GPRS MOBILE	
IMEL #:	004400012430220	
RSSI:	-95 dBm	
Operator:	IWS	
IMSI #:	310770100132968	
Firmware Rev.:	C29TB01	
Firmware Date:	JUL 16 2002	
Terminal App	Phone App	
General Details		
CORE Modules Configure 🔤 📥		

• Serial Status:

This indicates whether serial communications passed ("PASS") or failed ("FAIL") in its last transaction. A status of "FAIL" typically indicates that the 700 Series Computer is unable to establish communication with the radio module installed within.

• Manufacturer:

This lists the name of the manufacturer that developed this radio module, such as "Xircom, an Intel Corporation," "Siemens," or "Sierra Wireless."

• Model:

This identifies the product name for this radio module, such as "SB555," "GEM350X," or "MC45."

• **IMEI** *# (GSM/GPRS)*:

This is the IMEI (International Mobile station Equipment Identity) serial number of the GSM/GPRS radio module.

• RSSI:

This displays the RSSI frequency or lists "Unavailable" if there is no signal or the signal cannot be retrieved from the radio module.

• Operator:

This lists the name of the service providing the network support.

• SIM Status (GSM/GPRS MC45): Identifies whether a Subscriber Identity Module (SIM) card is installed in this 700 Series Computer.

- **Band** (*CDMA/1xRTT*): This identifies the frequency bands used by this radio module.
- IMSI # (GSM/GPRS): This shows the IMSI (International Mobile Subscriber Identity) number assigned to the SIM card installed in this 700 Series Computer.
- Radio Temp (*CDMA/1xRTT*): This identifies the temperature of the radio module, or lists "Unavailable degrees" if there is no information or the temperature cannot be measured.
- Firmware Rev: This identifies the firmware version, if available.
- Firmware Date (GSM/GPRS): This provides the last date when this firmware was updated, if available.

Terminal Application

Tap **Terminal App** from the **Details** page to send standard AT commands. Information about these AT commands are available under "*AT Command Interface*" on page 115.

Select an AT command from the drop-down list, then tap Send. The results of each test appears in the text box. Tap Exit or ok to close this screen and return to the Details page.

	4 € 6:25 🐽
Init complete Rx << OK Rx << OK Rx << ATEO Rx << OK Rx << OK Rx <<	
AT&V AT+CBAND? AT+CBAND=19 AT+CBAND=9	Send
	•



Note: You will need the Adobe Acrobat Reader application to view a PDF document. Go to "*http://www.adobe.com/prodindex/acrobat/readstep.html*" to install or download the latest Adobe Acrobat Reader according to Adobe's instructions.

Command Set for Sierra Wireless SB555

Use the AT command interface from Sierra Wireless to program the CDMA/1xRTT SB555 radio module. Documentation for this interface is available via the following URL. Click the "General AT command reference" link for a PDF document, which is 680 KB in size. *Note that this URL is subject to change.*

http://www.sierrawireless.com/ProductsOrdering/embedded_docs.html

Command Set for Xircom/Intel GEM350X

Use the GEM350X AT command list from Intel Corporation to program the GPRS/GSM GEM350X radio module. The "*GEM350X Programmer's Reference*" is available either from Intermec Technologies or from Intel Corporation. Contact either your Intermec representative or the Intel Corporation support personnel at the following URL for more information. *Note that this URL is subject to change.*

http://support.intel.com/sites/support/index.htm?iid=intelhome1+support&

Command Set for Siemens MC45

Use the MC45 AT command interface from Siemens AG to program the GPRS/GSM MC45 radio module. The "*MC45 Siemens Cellular Engine AT Command Set*" is available either from Intermec Technologies or from Siemens AG. Contact either your Intermec representative or the Siemens AG support personnel at the following URL for more information. *Note that this URL is subject to change.*

http://www.siemens-mobile.com/btob/CDA/presentation/ap_btob_cda_presentation_fron tdoor/0,2950,12,FF.html

Testing the AT Commands

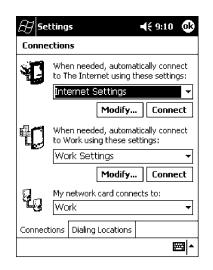
These commands can be sent to either WAN radio by setting up a dial-up networking connection to COM4. Do the following to initiate this connection and test these commands to your radio:



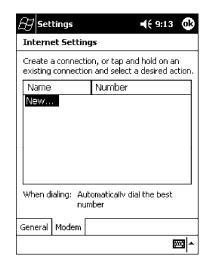
From the 700 Series Computer, select Start → Settings → the Connections tab → the Connections icon.

Connections

2 Tap Modify beneath the Internet Settings drop-down list.



3 Tap New.. to make a new connection.



4 Enter a name for the connection, select "WANA on COM4" from the **Select a modem** drop-down list, and select "115200" from the **Baud** rate drop-down list. Tap **Advanced** to continue.

B Settings	4 € 9:14
Make New Connection	
Enter a name for the conr	nection:
My Connection	
Select a modem:	
WANA on COM4:	•
Baud rate:	
115200 -	Advanced
Cancel B	ack Next
	⊷

5 On the Port Settings tab, check Enter dialing commands manually, then tap ok, Next, then Finish to return to the Internet Settings screen with your new connection.

8 Setting	5		-({ 9	:15	ok
Advanced					
Connection	prefere	nces	;		
Data Bi	ts:		8		•
Parit	:y:		None		•
Stop Bi	ts:		1		•
Flow Contr	ol:		Hardware	Э	•
Terminal					
Use terminal before connecting					
Use terminal after connecting					
🔽 Enter dia	ling comm	ands	manually		
Port Settings	TCP/IP	Nam	e Servers		
				Ø	≊ ^

6 Press and hold the new connection for a pop-up menu, then tap Connect to initiate the connection. Wait for about ten seconds for the Network Log On screen, then tap OK. Note: You do not need to enter any information within the Network Log On screen.

🔠 Logon to Network Serve ब{ 5:2	3
Network Log On	
Resource: My Connection	
User name:	
Password:	
Domain:	
Save password	
OK Cancel	

- 7 Use either the onscreen keyboard, or press the keys to type any of the AT commands provided by Sierra Wireless. Press or tap Enter to send each command. The results of each command sent will print onscreen see the sample illustration below. *Note that each "AT" command must start with either the "at" or "at+" characters.*
 - To see what you typed onscreen, type "ate1" to initiate the AT Echo command, then press Enter.

Wireless Printing

The 700 Series Computer can integrate the Wireless Printing option (which is equipped with a Bluetooth qualified module by Socket Communications) along with either the GSM/GPRS or the CDMA/1xRTT radio and the 802.11b radio. This option uses the network to print information stored on the 700 Series Computer.

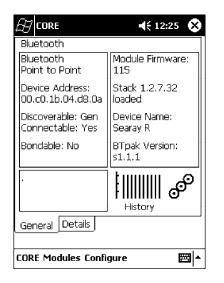
"Bluetooth" is the name given to a technology standard using short-range radio links, intended to replace the cables connecting portable and fixed electronic devices. The standard defines a uniform structure for a wide range of devices to communicate with each other, with minimal user effort. Its key features are robustness, low complexity, low power, and low cost. The technology also offers wireless access to LANs, the mobile phone network, and the internet for a host of home appliances and portable hand-held interfaces.

Documentation

Information about additional "Bluetooth" software, including the Bluetooth Device Manager and the BTctrl program, can be found within the Wireless Printing SDK. This is located on the 700C Software Tools CD, via the directory off the root of the toolkit called "*Wireless Printing SDK*." It also can be found in the *Wireless Printing Development Guide*, also on the 700C Tools CD.

Bluealps CORE Module

The Bluealps CORE module displays helpful information about this Wireless Printing option within your 700 Series Computer. Below are descriptions and meanings for each piece of information provided via the **General** tab, reading from top to bottom starting on the left.



• Bluetooth Point to Point:

This is the network type. "Point to Point" is the type of connection supported as of this publication. *Scatternets are not supported.* The only supported application is wireless printing to Intermec wireless printers, such as the 781T Belt-Mount Printer.

• Device Address:

This provides the network address, which in this case, will be replaced by the device address of the Bluetooth compatible module within your 700 Series Computer. *Note that this address is universally unique*.

• Discoverable:

The following is displayed depending on whether the 700 Series Computer is configured to be discoverable:

"Gen" Generally discoverable

"Lim" Limited discovery

"No" Not discoverable

• Connectable:

This defines whether the 700 Series Computer is able to accept other devices with Bluetooth compatible modules connecting to it. "Yes" if the connection is doable, "No" if not.

• Bondable:

This defines the security element of the 700 Series Computer, which is the bondable setting. If the unit is bondable, then "Yes" is displayed, otherwise "No" is displayed.

• Module Firmware:

This reflects the firmware (hardware) version of the 700 Series Computer. When the CORE module first installs onto the unit, the firmware level is unknown, thus "...reading" is displayed. Once the firmware level is read from the unit, then a three-digit decimal is displayed.

• Stack [Stack Version] [loaded/not loaded]:

[Stack Version] displays the Bluetooth stack version, which appears in the "1.2.3.4" format. If the stack is loaded, then "loaded" is displayed after the stack version, otherwise "not loaded" is displayed.

• Device Name:

This displays the device name as assigned to the Bluetooth compatible module by the end-user. If the configured name is longer than the space allowed, it will be truncated.

• BTpak Version:

This displays the driver version of additional Bluetooth components within the 700 Series Computer and is usually presented in the "1.2.3" format. The version may also contain a letter at either end.



• History:

This bar graph displays an active history of this wireless printer driver's quality of connections.



• Friendly Indicator:

If the Bluetooth stack is loaded, then all three dots are filled. These dots are left empty if the stack is not loaded. These dots do vary based on the CORE application's perception of the overall connection quality.

AutoIP/DHCP

Automatic Private IP Addressing (AutoIP) is enabled by default in Pocket PC 2002. To remain compatible with other Pocket PC devices, this setting needs to be enabled. You can configure the registry settings in the following to set the required AutoIP/DHCP behavior:

- For Ethernet: HKEY_LOCAL_MACHI NE\Comm\LAN9001\TcpI p
- Fot 802.11b: HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Comm\NETWLAN1\TcpIp

Other registry keys that can modify the behavior of AutoIP are as follows. You can find the appropriate settings and behavior of each of these keys in Microsoft Help.

- AutoInterval
- AutoMask
- AutoSubnet
- AutoIP
- AutoSeed

When a TCP/IP client cannot find a DHCP server, it generates an AutoIP address from the 169.254.xxx.xxx block. The client then tries to check for a DHCP server every 300 seconds (5 minutes) and if a DHCP server is found, the client drops the AutoIP address and uses the address from the DHCP server.

In the MSDN Windows CE documentation, see "Automatic Client Configuration" for more information on AutoIP.

To disable AutoIP, set the AutoCfg registry entry to "0." If a DHCP server cannot be found, instead of using AutoIP, the system will display the "Unable to obtain a server assigned IP address" message.



Note: If AutoIP is defined using CAB files, the EnableDHCP registry key must also be defined and set to "1" before the system will attempt to obtain a DHCP address.

To extend the number of attempts that a DHCP client makes to get a DHCP address, use the DhcpRetryDialogue and DhcpMaxRetry registry settings.

Change the AutoInterval registry key value to make the client retry more often to obtain a DHCP address.

SNMP Configuration

Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) was developed in the late 1980s to provide a general-purpose internetworking management protocol. Its primary goal was to be simple so nothing would stand in the way of its ubiquitous deployment. To this end, it has been very successful as it is currently deployed in almost every major internetworking product on the market. However, like many achieved goals, the primary strength can also become a weakness.

The Focus was "Simple"

An extreme example of simplicity versus power can be realized by comparing SNMP against the Common Management Information Protocol (CMIP), the ISO entry to the standard management protocol world. CMIP has a very rich set of primitives and a core set of data elements. However, to implement CMIP, a subset of the protocol must be selected. Then, to achieve interoperability, this subset must be agreed upon with other implementors. As SNMP was specified completely and with no options, one implemented what was there and interoperability was assured.

Returning to simplicity, SNMP was built simply for a number of reasons other than time to market: robustness in the face of network failure, low overhead in the devices running the protocol; and ease of debugging the protocol itself *(the last thing you want to debug is the management protocol that is supposed to be helping you debug your network)*. Thus, the SNMP limited itself to the User Datagram Protocol (UDP). This gave the implementor the ability and responsibility to manage lost packets and perform any necessary retransmissions. As network debugging in the face of changing routes will certainly mean losing packets, retaining this control from the transport service *(layer 4)* was considered essential. Since a network management protocol will run continuously, it is mandatory that it consume as minimal a network resource as possible. UDP allows the necessary control over packet transmissions, packet size and content *(packetization)*. It is a natural choice.

Using SNMP

SNMP has three control primitives that initiate data flow from the requester (*get, get-next, and set*). There are two control primitives the responder uses to reply. One is used in response to the requester's direct query (*get-response*) and the other is an asynchronous response to obtain the requester's attention (*trap*). All five of these primitives are carried by UDP and are thus limited in size by the amount of data that can fit into a single UDP packet. The relatively small message size was a goal of the design but for some reasonable set of network management functions, it imposes a limitation.

Often in network management, it is necessary to obtain bulk information without knowing at first what is in that bulk. In one case, there is a set of problems having to do with packets not going where they are supposed to, due to device misconfiguration that prevents proper protocol operation where one needs to view the entire set of data.

Retrieval of Management Information

SNMP has the get-next primitive which permits the viewing of data without requiring prior knowledge. If you know what you are looking for, the get primitive will return it. When you want an entire table of information, the get-next primitive will obtain it. However, unless employed with care, the get-next primitive can be extremely resource-intensive in real time, network bandwidth, and the agent's CPU time. The simplest use of the get-next primitive is to start at the beginning of a table, await the response and then issue another get-next with the name returned. As an example, say you wanted the next-hop address, next-hop interface, and route-type from a routing table containing 1000 entries. Using the simplest form of get-next, this would require 2x3x1000 or 6000 packets (get-next and get-response packets, columns, and rows). A straight-forward optimization would be to request the three columns in a single packet. This puts the number of packets at 2x1000 or 2000 packets. In real time, it is the product of the round trip by the number of request. In agent CPU time, this is still 6000 lookups in the routing table for both cases.

An Early Approach to Getting More than One Item at a Time

The ability to retrieve only one piece or object at a time has been a problem for SNMP. This is particularly an issue with the use of this protocol in wireless environments where the wireless datapipe is small and overhead due to network management it is considered overhead. One approach creates multiple get-next requests running concurrently. A second algorithm, reduces the packet count by combining the multiple concurrent get-nexts into a single packet. Neither approach has been implemented which makes network management in wireless environment, though essential to the success of the operation, tenuous. The issue has been resolved in SNMP V2 protocol where a get-bulk primitive has been defined.

Conclusion

Software development moves forward by evolving the unknown into the known and wireless environments are moving from vertical only application to wide spread implementation. At the time of the SNMP inception, it was not possible to conceive of a reliable transport based network management protocol. Today's problems require more sophisticated data to analyze a problem. This puts the burden back on the protocol to send and receive data quickly and efficiently. Work continues in subcommittees to improve SNMP and resolve the issues that are developing with new applications and new network architectures.

SNMP Configuration on the 700 Series Computer

In short, SNMP is an application-layer protocol that facilitates the exchange of management information between network devices. The 700 Series Computer is such an SNMP-enabled device. Use SNMP to control and configure the 700 Series Computer anywhere on an SNMP-enabled network.

The 700 Series Computer supports four proprietary Management Information Bases (MIBs) and Intermec Technologies provides SNMP support for MIB-II through seven read-only MIB-II (RFC1213-MIB) Object Identifiers (OIDs).



Note: You can only query these seven OIDs through an SNMP management station, these are not available in the Unit Manager applications.

Management Information Base

The Management Information Base is a database that contains information about the elements to be managed. The information identifies the management element and specifies its type and access mode (Read-Only, Read-Write). MIBs are written in ASN.1 (Abstract Syntax Notation.1) - a machine independent data definition language. *Note: Elements to be managed are represented by objects. The MIB is a structured collection of such objects.*

You will find the following MIB files either on the 700C Tools CD or on the web via *http://www.intermec.com*:

• INTERMEC.MIB

Defines the root of the Intermec MIB tree.

• ITCADC.MIB

Defines objects for Automated Data Collection (ADC), such as bar code symbologies.

• ITCSNMP.MIB

Defines objects for Intermec SNMP parameters and security methods, such as an SNMP security IP address.

• ITCTERMINAL.MIB

Defines objects for 700 Series parameters, such as key clicks.

Object Identifiers

Each object has a unique identifier called an OID. OIDs consist of a sequence of integer values represented in dot notation. Objects are stored in a tree structure. OIDs are assigned based on the position of the object in the tree. Seven MIB OIDs are shown in the followig table.

Example

The internet OID = 1.3.6.1.

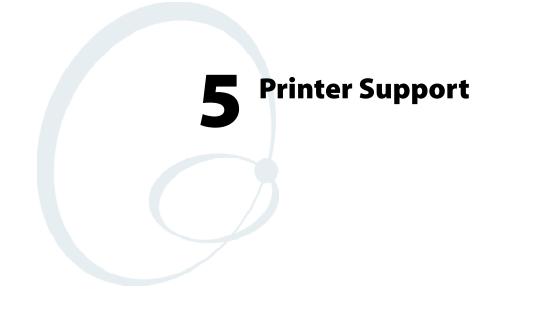
MIB Object Identifiers

MIB-II Item	OID	Group or Table	Description
ifNumber	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.1.0	Interfaces Group	Indicates the number of adapters present in the system. For the 700 Series Computer, if one adapter is present in the system, then <i>ifNum-</i> <i>ber</i> = 1 and <i>ifIndex</i> = 1.
ifIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.1.ifIndex	Interfaces Table (if Table)	A unique value for each interface. The value ranges between 1 and the value of <i>ifNumber</i> .
ifDescr	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.2.ifIndex	Interfaces Table (ifTable)	A textual string containing informa- tion about the interface.
ifType	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.3.ifIndex	Interfaces Table (if Table)	An integer containing information about the type of the interface. It is equal to 1 for Other.
ipAdEntAddr	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.20.1.1.IpAddress	IP address Table (ipAddrTable)	The IP address to which this entry's addressing information pertains <i>(same as 700 IP address)</i> , where IP Address is the valid non-zero IP address of the 700 Series Computer.
ipAdEntIfIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.20.1.2.IpAddress	IP address Table (ipAddrTable)	The index value that uniquely iden- tifies the interface to which this entry is applicable <i>(same as ifIndex)</i> .
ipAdEntNetMask	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.20.1.3.IpAddress	IP address Table (ipAddrTable)	The subnet mask associated with the IP address of this entry <i>(same as Subnet Mask)</i> .

Configuring with SNMP

The community string allows an SNMP manager to manage the 700 Series Computer with a specified privilege level. The default read-only community string is "public" and "private" is the default read/write community string. See the specific configuration parameter to find its OID. To configure the 700 Series Computers using SNMP:

- 1 Configure 700 Series Computers for RF or Ethernet communications.
- **2** Determine the OID (Object Identifier) for the parameter to be changed. The Intermec base OID is 1.3.6.1.4.1.1963.
- **3** Use your SNMP management station to get and set variables that are defined in the Intermec MIBs. You can set the traps, identification, or security configuration parameters for SNMP. *See Appendix A*, *"Control Panel Applets," to learn more about these parameters.*



The 700 Series Color Mobile Computer works with the following printers from Intermec Technologies. Contact an Intermec Representative for information about these printers.

- 6820
 - A full-page, 80-column printer.
- 6808
 - A 4-inch belt-mount printer.
- 781T

A 2-inch belt-mount printer with a Bluetooth compatible module from Socket Communications.

• 782T

A 2-inch workboard printer.

Printing ASCII

The following methods for printing using Pocket PC at this time is as follows:

- Add port drivers to print ASCII directly to the port.
- Use LinePrinter ActiveX Control from the Software Developer's Kit (SDK) see the SDK User's Manual for more information.
- Via wireless printing see the Wireless Printing Development Guide on the 700C Software Tools CD for more information.

Directly to a Port

Printing directly to the port sends RAW data to the printer. The format of this data depends upon your application and the printer capabilities.

You must understand the printer commands available for your specific printer. Generally, applications just send raw ASCII text to the printer. Since you are sending data to the printer from your application directly to the port you are in complete control of the printers operations. This allows you to do line printing *(print one line at a time)* rather than the page format printing offered by the GDI approach. It is also much faster since data does not have to be converted from one graphics format to the other (display to printer). Most Intermec[®] printers use Epson Escape Sequences to control print format operations.

These commands are available in documentation you receive with your printers or from technical support. Win32 APIs are required to print directly to the port.

Directly to a Generic Serial Port

To print directly to a generic serial port printer (non-Intermec printers):

- Use CreateFile() to open ports COM1: can be opened on most devices.
- Use WriteFile() to send data directly to the printer.
- Use CloseHandle() when you are finished printing to close the port.

IrDA Printer Driver

IrDA printing is only available on the certain devices and is supported directly by the Windows CE load via the IrSock API provided by the Microsoft Win32 API without need for additional drivers. Intermec 6804, 6805, 6806, 6808 and 6820 and other IrDA printers are supported.

NPCP Printer Driver

The NPCP printer communications driver (NPCPPORT.DLL) is a Stream Device Driver built into the operating system. The driver supports only NPCP communications to and from the 6820 and 4820 printers over a selected serial port.

All applications use WIN32 API functions to access the drivers. Basic operations are easily implemented by applications through the CreateFile(), WriteFile(), ReadFile(), DeviceIOControl(), and CloseHandle() Win32 APIs.

Operations to upgrade printer modules, perform printer diagnostics, and get printer configuration are performed largely via DeviceIOControl() functions.

About NPCP

NPCP (Norand[®] Portable Communications Protocol) is a proprietary protocol that provides session, network, and datalink services for Intermec mobile computers in the Intermec LAN environment used with printers and data communications.

NPCP Driver Installation and Removal

Use LPT9: for the NPCP printer device and COM1 for the last parameter. COM1 is the connection available via the 700 Series Computer.

Applications use the RegisterDevice() function to install the driver. DeregisterDevice() uninstalls the device driver and frees memory space when the driver is not required. Use the HANDLE returned by RegisterDevice() as the parameter to DeregisterDevice().

Use the RegisterDevice() function call as demonstrated below. Specify the full path name to the driver starting at the root for the RegisterDevice() function to work properly. The last parameter to RegisterDevice() is a DWORD that represents the name of the port for the NPCP stream driver to use. Build this parameter on the stack if it is not to be paged out during the call. The first parameter "LPT" (Device Name) and the second parameter "9' (index), indicate the name of the registered device, such as LPT9. This is used in the CreateFile() function call.

```
Install()
{
    HANDLE hDevice;
    TCHAR port[6];
    port[0] = TCHAR(`C');
    port[1] = TCHAR(`O');
    port[2] = TCHAR(`M');
    port[3] = TCHAR(`1');
    port[3] = TCHAR(`1');
    port[4] = TCHAR(`:');
    port[5] = TCHAR(0);
    hDevice = RegisterDevice ( (TEXT("LPT"), 9,
    TEXT(``\STORAGE CARD\\WINDOWS\\NPCPPORT.dll"), (DWORD)port);
}
```

Opening the NPCP Driver

The application opens the NPCP driver by using the CreateFile() function. The call can be implemented as follows. The first parameter "LPT9:" must reflect the device name and index used in the RegisterDevice() function call and will fail for any of the following reasons:

hFile = CreateFile(_T("LPT9:"), GENERIC_WRITE |
GENERIC_READ, 0, NULL, OPEN_ALWAYS, FILE_ATTRIBUTE_NORMAL,
NULL);

- The port associated with the device during RegisterDevice() is in use.
- The NPCP device is already open.
- The share mode is not set to zero. The device cannot be shared.
- Access permissions are not set to GENERIC_WRITE | GENERIC_READ. Both modes must be specified.

Closing the NPCP Driver

Using the CloseHandle() (hFile) function closes the NPCP driver. Where *hFile* is the handle returned by the CreateFile() function call.

- TRUE = the device is successfully closed.
- FALSE = an attempt to close NULL HANDLE or an already closed device.

Reading from the NPCP Driver

Reading of the NPCP printers is not supported since all responses from the printer are the result of commands sent to the printer. DeviceIoControl() functions are provided where data is to be received from the printer.

Writing to the NPCP Driver

All Print data can be sent to the printer using the WriteFile() function. The print data written to the driver must contain the proper printer commands for formatting. If the function returns FALSE, the NPCP error may be retrieved using IOCTL_NPCP_ERROR. See the description on the next page.

NPCP Driver I/O Controls

An application uses the DeviceIoControl() function to specify an printer operation to be performed. Certain I/O controls are required to bind and close communication sessions with the printer, and must be completed before any other commands to the driver can execute properly.

The function returns TRUE to indicate the device successfully completed its specified I/O control operation, otherwise it returns FALSE. The following I/O control codes are defined:

```
#define IOCTL_NPCP_CANCEL
CTL_CODE(FILE_DEVICE_SERIAL_PORT, 0x400, METHOD_BUFFERED, FILE_ANY_ACCESS)
#define IOCTL_NPCP_BIND
CTL_CODE(FILE_DEVICE_SERIAL_PORT, 0x401, METHOD_BUFFERED, FILE_ANY_ACCESS)
#define IOCTL_NPCP_CLOSE
CTL_CODE(FILE_DEVICE_SERIAL_PORT, 0x402, METHOD_BUFFERED, FILE_ANY_ACCESS)
#define IOCTL_NPCP_ERROR
CTL_CODE(FILE_DEVICE_SERIAL_PORT, 0x403, METHOD_BUFFERED, FILE_ANY_ACCESS)
#define IOCTL_NPCP_FLUSH
CTL_CODE(FILE_DEVICE_SERIAL_PORT, 0x404, METHOD_BUFFERED, FILE_ANY_ACCESS)
#define IOCTL_NPCP_FLUSH
CTL_CODE(FILE_DEVICE_SERIAL_PORT, 0x404, METHOD_BUFFERED, FILE_ANY_ACCESS)
#define IOCTL_NPCP_IOCTL
CTL_CODE(FILE_DEVICE_SERIAL_PORT, 0x405, METHOD_BUFFERED, FILE_ANY_ACCESS)
#define IOCTL_NPCP_PRTVER
CTL_CODE(FILE_DEVICE_SERIAL_PORT, 0x406, METHOD_BUFFERED, FILE_ANY_ACCESS)
```

• IOCTL_NPCP_CANCEL

This cancels all printing at the printer. It flushes the printer buffers and reinitializes the printer to its default state. No parameters are required.

• IOCTL_NPCP_BIND

This command is required before any data is sent or received by the printer. Once the driver is opened, the application must bind the communications session with the printer before any data can be sent or received by the printer. If an error occurs during the bind, the application may use IOCTL_NPCP_ERROR to get the current extended error code. No parameters are required.

• IOCTL_NPCP_CLOSE

This command closes the current session with the printer. This function always returns TRUE. No parameters are required.

• IOCTL_NPCP_ERROR

This command returns the extended NPCP error code in PL/N format. The word returned will contain the PL/N compatible error code in the low byte and completion flags in the high byte. If the frame that returned an error was not received correctly by the printer the FRAME_NOT_ACKED bit will be set in the high byte. This operation always returns TRUE. An output buffer of at least 2 bytes is required. See "*NPCP Error Codes*" on page 133.

• IOCTL_NPCP_FLUSH

This command allows the application to poll the printer for errors while the report is completing the print process at the printer. If an error occurs during the polling process, the operation will return FALSE and the application can get the extended error code by using IOCTL_NPCP_ERROR. No parameters are required.

NPCP Printer Communications

All NPCP printer communications should be based on the following flow:

- **1** Use CreateFile(); to open the printer driver.
- 2 Use IOCTL_NPCP_BIND to bind a session with the printer; IOCTL_NPCP_ERROR to check for errors on the bind to ensure success; and IOCTL_NPCP_CANCEL to cancel any outstanding print jobs.
- **3** Use IOCTL_NPCP_FLUSH to poll the printer to free up printer buffer resources. Use IOCTL_NPCP_FLUSH to poll the printer's status. If an error is reported by the IOCTL, then use IOCTL_NPCP_ERROR to get the error and determine the correct recovery procedure.
- **4** Use WriteFile(); to write your data to the printer. Check for errors and that all data were written. Use IOCTL_NPCP_ERROR to get the extended error. If the error is critical in nature, use IOCTL_NPCP_CLOSE, followed by CloseFile(), to end the communications session. Start a new session, beginning with step 1 to ensure proper printing. For noncritical errors display the error and retry the operation.
- 5 After all data is sent to the printer, ensure that the printer continues to print the report properly by polling the printer's status. Use IOCTL_NPCP_FLUSH to poll the printer's status. If an error is reported by the IOCTL, then use IOCTL_NPCP_ERROR to get the error and determine the correct recovery procedure.

Sample Code

See sample code in the "\700 Color Dev Tools\Installable Drivers\Port Drivers\Npcp\NPCPPrint\" directory for more details on printing, printer communications and error code handling.

NPCP Error Codes

Call the IOCTL_NPCP_ERROR I/O control function to receive PL/N compatible error codes. Applications must decide how to act upon the data returned.

// Definition of NPCP communications Errors and Printer Errors #define PNRDY (BYTE)102 // link not ready error #define RXTMO (BYTE)104 // link no receive error #define TXTMO (BYTE)106 // link no transmit error #define BADADR (BYTE)111 // frame address error #define GAPERR (BYTE)112 // link gap error (timeout) in receive data #define LSRPE (BYTE)113 // frame parity error on length field #define IFTS (BYTE)120 // session layer - invalid frame this state #define NS_NE_VR (BYTE)121 // session layer sequence error #define NR_NE_VS (BYTE)122 // session layer sequence error #define MAC CRCERR (BYTE)124 // MAC CRC error #define RLENERR (BYTE)123 // MAC too much data received #define FRMERR (BYTE)200 // Frame Reject #define FRMERR IF (BYTE)201 // Frame Reject - Invalid Frame #define FRMERR NR (BYTE)202 // Frame Reject - NR Mismatch #define FRMERR NS (BYTE)203 // Frame Reject - NS Mismatch #define NDMERR (BYTE)204 // Normal Disconnect mode error #define BINDERR (BYTE)210 // bind error #define IPLDUR (BYTE)221 // invalid presentation layer response #define HEADJAM (BYTE)222 // printer head jam #define PAPEROUT (BYTE)223 // printer paper out #define LOWVOLTS (BYTE)224 // printer low voltage #define HIVOLTS (BYTE)225 // printer over voltage #define LOWBAT (BYTE)226 // printer low battery #define COVEROFF (BYTE)227 // printer cover off error #define HEADFAULT (BYTE)228 // printer head short or driver short error #define PFFAULT (BYTE)229 // paper feed motor fault. #define FRAME NOT ACKED 0x8000 // frame was not received by printer and need to be resent.

O' Neil Printer Driver

The DTR printer communications driver is a Stream Device Driver named ONEIL.DLL.

All applications use WIN32 API functions to access drivers. Basic operations are easily implemented by applications through the CreateFile(), WriteFile(), DeviceIOControl() and CloseHandle() Win32 APIs.

The driver supports communications to 6804DM, 6804T, 6805A, 6806, 6808, 681T, and 781 printers over a selected serial port.

DTR Driver Installation and Removal

Your application must install the device driver by using the RegisterDevice() function. The driver name is ONEIL.DLL. We recommend that you use "DTR" for the Device Name parameter, "1" for the Device Driver index parameter, and use any of the following strings for the last parameter:

- NULL (==0) Defaults to COM1 @ 9600
- "COM1" only COM port specified defaults to 9600
- "COM1:9600" sets to COM port and specified bit rate
- "COM1:19200" sets to COM port and specified bit rate

Use the HANDLE returned by RegisterDevice() as the parameter to DeregisterDevice(). The correct usage of the RegisterDevice() function call is demonstrated below. You may use DeregisterDevice() to uninstall the driver.

```
Install()
{
    HANDLE hDevice;
    TCHAR port[6];
    port[0] = TCHAR(`C');
    port[1] = TCHAR(`O');
    port[2] = TCHAR(`M');
    port[3] = TCHAR(`1');
    port[4] = TCHAR(`1');
    port[5] = TCHAR(0);
    hDevice = RegisterDevice ( (TEXT("DTR"), 1, TEXT("\\WINDOWS\\ONEIL.DLL"),
    (DWORD)port);
```

}

Opening the DTR Driver

The application opens the DTR driver by using the CreateFile() function. The call can be implemented as follows:

hFile = CreateFile(_T("DTR1:"), GENERIC_WRITE, 0, NULL, OPEN_ALWAYS, FILE_ATTRIBUTE_NORMAL, NULL);

The first parameter "DTR1:" must reflect the device name and index used in the RegisterDevice() function call.

The function call will fail for any of the following reasons:

- The port associated with the device during RegisterDevice() is currently in use.
- The DTR device is already open.
- The share mode is not set to zero. The device cannot be shared.
- Access permissions are not set to GENERIC_WRITE.

Closing the DTR Driver

Using the CloseHandle() (hFile) function closes the DTR driver. Where *hFile* is the handle returned by the CreateFile() function call.

- TRUE indicates the device is successfully closed.
- FALSE indicates an attempt to close a NULL HANDLE or an already closed device.

Writing to the DTR Driver

You can use the WriteFile() function to send all Print data to the printer. The print data being written must contain the proper formatting printer commands.

DTR Printer Communications

All DTR printer communications should be based on the following flow:

- **1** Use CreateFile(); to open the printer driver.
- **2** Use WriteFile() to write your data to the printer. Check for errors and that all data were written.
- **3** Use CloseHandle() to close the driver.

Chapter 5 — Printer Support



The 700 Series Color Mobile Computer is available with imaging or laser scanning technologies, including the following:

• APS linear imager:

Reads 1D symbologies and PDF 417 bar codes. Linear imaging using Vista Scanning technology reads low-contrast bar codes, laminated bar codes, and bar codes displayed on CRT or TRT displays. This imaging uses harmless LEDs for illumination and does not require any warning labels. Vista Scanning is more reliable than lasers as it is a completely solid state with no moving parts or oscillating mirrors.

• 2D Imager:

This decodes several stacked 1D and 2D symbologies, including PDF 417 and Data Matrix without "painting." It can also read 1D codes from any orientation, for example the scan beam does not need to be aligned perpendicular to the symbol in order to read it. Photography is a secondary application; the lens in the device will favor bar code reading. Photos are 640x480, 256 gray-scale.

- 1D laser scanner: Traditional laser scanner that decodes 1D bar codes.
- PDF 417 laser scanner: Higher speed laser scanner that can read PDF 417 labels by "painting" the label.

Scanner Control and Data Transfer



Note: To use the methods described below, enable Data Collection functionality on the 700 Computer using the bootloader configuration menu. See Chapter 3, "Installing Applications" for more information.

The Data Server and associated software provide several ways to manipulate scanner control and data transfer between the scanner subsystem and user applications:

• Automatic Data Collection COM Interfaces:

These COM interfaces allow user applications to receive bar code data, and configure and control the bar code reader engine.

• ITCAxBarCodeReaderControl functions:

These ActiveX controls allow user applications to collect bar code data from the scanner, to configure the scanner, and to configure audio and visual notification when data arrives. For more information, see the *SDK User's Manual*.

- ITCAxReaderCommand functions: Use these ActiveX controls to modify and retrieve configuration information using the reader interface commands. For more information, see the SDK User's Manual.
- Scanning EasySet bar code labels: You can use the EasySet bar code creation software from Intermec Technologies Corporation to print configuration labels. Scan the labels to change the scanner configuration and data transfer settings.

Automatic Data Collection COM Interfaces

Data collection configuration and functionality cannot be accessed by any means *(including control panel applets or remote management applications)* until after the 700 Series Computer has completed initialization, which occurs during a warm- or cold-boot or after a firmware upgrade.

When initialization is complete, the green LED on the 700 Series Computer stops flashing. Changes made to configuration settings remain after a warm boot. After a cold-boot, all configuration settings are reset to their defaults with the exception of scanner configurations, which remain except for the Symbology Identifier transmission option or the Preamble and Postamble strings. To reset all configuration settings to the factory defaults, the S9C scanner firmware must be reloaded. The Automatic Data Collection (ADC) functions are accessed through custom COM interfaces. These interfaces allow the application to receive bar code data and configure and control the bar code reader engine. The COM interfaces include the following functions:

- IADC (starting on page 151)
- IBarCodeReaderControl (starting on page 159)
- IS9CConfig (starting on page 172)
- IS9CConfig2 (starting on page 204)
- IS9CConfig3 (starting on page 216)
- IImage Interface (*starting on page 221*)

Multiple ADC COM Object Support

A 700 Series Computer may have multiple reader engines to decode different types of ADC data. For example, a bar code reader engine decodes raw bar code data and passes it to a bar code reader COM object. An RFID reader engine decodes raw RFID tag data and passes it to an RFID tag reader COM object.

ADC COM interfaces are implemented as in-process COM objects. An instance of the ADC COM object creates a logical connection to access or control the reader engine. Specifically, the IBarCodeReadConfig or IBar-CodeReaderControl COM objects can manage the bar code scanner configuration while the ADC COM object can gather data simultaneously. These ADC COM objects or connections can be created in a single application or multiple applications. Up to seven instances of a COM object can be created for a reader engine. For more information, see "*How to Create and Use the ADC COM Interfaces*" below.

For data collection features, ADC COM objects also provide for read ahead and non-read ahead data access and grid data editing.

How to Create and Use the ADC COM Interfaces

You can also use the Input Device Functions *(starting on page 149)* to create and use the ADC COM interfaces.

- 1 Create and initialize the in-process Bar Code Reader object using ITCDeviceOpen() *(see page 149)*. This function returns a COM Interface pointer to the Bar Code Reader Object created by the function.
- 2 Set the data grid if data filtering is desired *(default grid gives the application all the data)*. Below is a sample code of how to set the grid to accept Code 39 data that starts with the letter "A" and is not a reader command.

```
ITC_BARCODEREADER_GRID stBCGrid;
stBCGrid.stDIGrid.szDataMask = TEXT("A%s");
stBCGrid.stDDGrid.dwSymbologyMask = BARCODE_SYMBOLOGY_CODE39;
stBCGrid.dwDataSourceTypeMask = ITC_DATASOURCE_USERINPUT;
HRESULT hrStatus = pIBCControl->SetAttribute(
ITC_RDRATTR_GRID,
reinterpret_cast<BYTE *>(&stBCGrid),
sizeof(stBCGrid)
);
```

3 Issue a read to accept the bar code data. The timestamp, symbology, and data type are put into the ITC_BARCODE_DATA_DETAILS structure. Passing in a pointer to this structure is optional. The following sample code uses an infinite timeout.

```
ITC_BARCODE_DATA_DETAILS stBCDetails;
BYTE rgbBCData[1024]; // Buffer used to accept the bar code data
DWORD dwBytesReceived; // Number of bytes in the return data.
HRESULT hrStatus = pIBCControl->Read(
rgbBCData,
sizeof(rgbBCData),
&dwBytesReceived,
& stBCDetails,
INFINITE
);
```

4 Compile and link the application.

Read-Ahead Bar Code Data Access

The Bar Code Reader COM object delivers ADC data to the connection in read-ahead mode. In this mode, the data is queued until a COM connection is ready to read it. Read-ahead mode decouples reader device performance from the application performance. That is, data is read as fast as the user can scan it, independent of the connection processing load. No data will be scanned until the first Read() function is posted.

Grid Data Filtering

The virtual wedge retrieves scanned Automatic Data Collection (ADC) data and sends it to the keypad driver so that the 700 Series Computer can receive and interpret the data as keypad input. The data can be filtered so that only data conforming to a certain text pattern or symbology will be sent to an application. After the data is filtered, it can be edited by adding, deleting, or rearranging portions of the text or by extracting portions of text for further editing. To filter and edit data, you need to define the virtual wedge grid parameters.

• Grid Processing:

Grid processing takes place in two steps:

• Compilation:

In which the user's grid expressions are checked for errors and reduced to a binary form for faster matching. This is done whenever the virtual wedge grid is set or changed by configuration software.

• Matching:

In which data is tested against the grids set in compilation. Matching can be performed multiple times after a compilation. The AIM symbology ID of the data being tested, including the enclosing angle brackets, must be prepended to the incoming data.

Syntax

The basic syntax of each grid expression is:

<symID> filter-expression= > editing-expression

where:

• symID

Is the AIM symbology ID (see the AIM Symbology ID Defaults table starting on page 219).

• filterexpression

Is any character string that includes valid filter expression values (see the "Filter Expression Values" table on the next page).

• editing-expression

Is any character string that includes valid editing expression values (see the "Editing Expression Values" table on page 144).

Filter Expression Values

A filter-expression can be any string of text containing the operators listed below.

Filter Expression Values

Operator	Meaning	Example
Any character string not containing the special characters: .? [] { } or \ (period, question mark, left/right brackets, left/right curly brackets, back- slash).	Match the string literally.	super20 matches super20
<pre>\c where c is any of the special char- acters: .? [] {} or \ (period, question mark, left/right brackets, left/right curly brackets, back- slash)</pre>	Remove any special meaning of c.	* matches *
. (period)	Any character.	. matches x
^ (tarot)	Anchor the match at the beginning of the string.	^abc matches abc, but not aabc
\$ (dollar sign)	Anchor the match at the end of the string.	abc\$ matches abc but not abcc
? (question mark)	Repeat the preceding expression zero or one time.	aa? matches a or aa
* (asterisk)	Repeat the preceding expression zero or more times.	ab*c matches ac, abc, abbc, etc.
+ (plus symbol)	Repeat the preceding expression one or more times.	ab+c matches abc, abbc, etc.
[characterclass]	A series of nonrepeating characters denoting a class.	[abcdefhijklmnopqrstuvwxyz] is the class of all lowercase alphas.
[rangel`rangeh]	A sequential range of nonrepeating characters denoting a class.	[a-z] is the class of all lowercase al- phas.
[^characterclass]	Any character except those denoted by a character class.	[^a-z] matches a numeric digit or a punctuation mark.
[characterclass_tag]	 [:alnum:] - Alphanumeric characters [:alpha:] - Alphabetic characters [:blank:] - Tab and space [:cntrl:] - Control characters [:digit:] - Numeric characters [:graph:] - All printable characters except space [:lower:] - Lowercase letters [:print:] - All printable characters [:punct:] - Punctuation [:space:] - White space characters [:upper:] - Uppercase letters [:xdigit:] - Hexadecimal digits 	[[:alpha:]]* matches Dynaction, Selmer, or NewWonder but not Su- per20
{num}	Matches exactly <i>num</i> repetitions.	a{3} matches only aaa
{min,}	Matches at least num repetitions.	a{3,} matches aaaa but not aa

Operator	Meaning	Example
{min,max}	A repetition operator like + or *, ex- cept the number of repetitions is spe- cified by <i>min</i> and <i>max</i> .	[a-z]{1,3} matches a, ab, or aab, but not aabc
(expr1) (expr2)	Matches <i>expr1</i> or <i>expr2</i> .	a b matches a or b
(subexpression)	Grouping operator to consolidate terms into a subexpression, which can override the order of evaluation. The subexpression is available for lat- er matching or editing by means of \land <i>index</i> , where \land <i>index</i> is between 1-9 and refers to the index-th group in the string, counting from left to right. \land 0 refers to the whole expres- sion.	Overriding evaluation order: (ab)*c matches c, abc, ababc, etc. Back-referencing: (aa)bb\1 matches aabbaa.

Filter Expression Values (continued)

Editing Expression Values

This table lists the valid operators for editing expressions.

Operator	Meaning	Example
\index	The <i>index-th</i> subexpression (reading left-right) in the matched string. <i>index</i> must be between 0^{9} . 0^{0} is the matched expression itself.	M([0-9]{6})= > \1 produces 270494 when M270494 is scanned, stripping off the first character.
& or \0	The matched expression itself.	M[0-9]{6}= > \0-Conn and M[0-9]{6}= > &-Conn both produce M270494-Conn when M270494 is scanned.
\xhh	A concise representation of the lower 256 characters in the Unicode set. When con- verted, this is still a 16-bit value.	\x0d inserts a carriage return.
any character string	Inserts any character string in the output string.	See previous examples.

- <*symID*> is optional. If present, only data in the indicated symbology is accepted.
- If the entire expression is blank, all data is passed unchanged. If = > *editing-expression* is omitted, then all data that passes through the filter is returned unchanged. If = > *editing expression* is present, the data is transformed by editing-expression.
- Multiple grid expressions can be compiled and are related in a logical OR fashion. These are expressed as single grid expressions separated by semicolons. When matching is attempted, the first grid expression from left to right that achieves a match will cause the data to be accepted.
- All pattern expressions and parsed data are in Unicode.

Grid Filter Example 1

This accepts a serial number in which the encoded number is a six-character string beginning with M followed by six numeric characters.

• Filter

M[0-9]{6}

• Effect When a bar code, such as M270494, is scanned, all data is passed.

Grid Filter Example 2

This formats a scanned Social Security number and forms it into an XML element tagged "SSN".

• Filter

 $([0-9]{3})([0-9]{2})([0-9]{4}) = > \langle SSN \rangle 1-2-3\langle SSN \rangle$

• Effect

A bar code, such as 123456789, is passed and reformatted to $<\!SSN > 123\text{-}45\text{-}6789\text{-}/SSN >$

Grid Filter Example 3

This deletes the first three and last five characters of a 21-character Code 128 label and deletes the first two characters of a 10-character Interleaved 2 of 5 label.

• Filter <]C > ...(.{13}).....= > \1; <]I > ..(.....)= > \1

```
• Effect
```

If Code 128, AAA1234567890123BBBBB becomes 1234567890123 If Interleaved 2 of 5, AA12345678 becomes 12345678

Grid Filter Example 4

This inverts data such that the first alphabetic string (like a first name) and second alphabetic string (like a last name) are reversed and separated by a comma and a space.

• Filter

 $([[:alpha:]]) + ([[:alpha:]]) + > \2, \1$

• Effect

When a bar code with the data "Dexter Gordon" is scanned, the data is modified to read "Gordon, Dexter".

ADC Connection

A 700 Series Computer can have both Bar Code and RFID reader engines with each engine supporting multiple connections. Each connection allows an application to access data or manage a configuration. An application could have multiple connections.

```
// Get an instance of the ADC COM object that corresponds integrated scanner
IBarCodeReaderControl *pIBCControl;
    // Pointer to the Bar Code Reader object
```

```
HRESULT hrStatus = ITCDeviceOpen( TEXT("default"),
IID IBarCodeReaderControl, ITC DHDEVFLAG READAHEAD,
(LPVOID *) &pIBCControl);
  // If the ADC object was successfully created and initialized, accept bar
code data.
ITC BARCODE DATA DETAILS stBCDetails;
stBCDetails.wStructSize = sizeof(stBCDetails);
BYTE rgbBCData[1024];
  //Buffer used to accept the bar code data
DWORD dwBytesReceived;
  // Number of bytes in the return data.
HRESULT hrStatus = pIBCControl->Read(
rgbBCData,
sizeof(rgbBCData),
&dwBytesReceived,
& stBCDetails,
INFINITE
);
```

2D Imager Overview

The 700 Color optional integrated 2D Imager captures 640x480 256-grayscale images at 20 frames per second. The imager features can be categorized into data collection features and image acquisition features as follows:

Data Collection Features

The imager includes a decode engine capable of decoding 2D matrix symbologies such as Data Matrix as well as the traditional 1D and stacked symbologies (see the table on the next page for supported symbologies). The application programming interfaces used to collect bar code data and configure the imager are the same as those used for the laser scanner. This includes the keyboard wedge as well as the ADC COM interfaces and includes functionality such as data editing and data filtering. In addition, the imager has the following configuration features (see "*IS9CConfig3 Functions*" starting on page 216 for configuration details):

• Aimer LED:

A small, rectangular-aiming LED is displayed periodically during the image capture and decoding process. The initial duration *(after scan but-tons are pressed)* of the aimer LED can be configured. This helps to select the specific bar code to be scanned with multiple bar codes in the image.

• Scaled Illumination LED:

When the ambient light is not sufficient to decode the bar code, the red illumination LEDs will be turned on to brighten the image. The intensity of the illumination LEDs is scaled to brighten the image just enough for decode. The reduces power consumption and the effect of specular reflection.

• Window size and position:

The default window size (640x480) can be reduced in size and positioned. This is useful in applications where multiple bar codes may be present in the image and the specific bar code must be selected to be read. For example, the window can be sized and positioned around the aimer LED. The entire bar code must reside in the configured window for a good decode.

Omni-directional scanning is a feature that does not require configuration. 1D and stacked symbologies as well as 2D matrix symbologies can be scanned with the 700 Series Computer in any orientation. Thus, time is not needed to orient the 700 horizontal as with laser scanners.

Bar Code Symbology	Imager	Laser Scanner
Code 39	Х	Х
Interleaved 2 of 5	Х	Х
Standard 2 of 5	Х	Х
Matrix 2 of 5		Х
Code 128	Х	Х
Code 93	Х	Х
Codabar	Х	Х
MSI		Х
Plessey		Х
UPC	Х	Х
EAN/EAN 128	Х	Х
Code 11		Х
PDF 417	Х	Х
Micro PDF 417		Х
Telepen		Х
Data Matrix	Х	
QR Code	Х	

The following table shows which bar code symbologies are supported either by an imager or by a laser scanner.

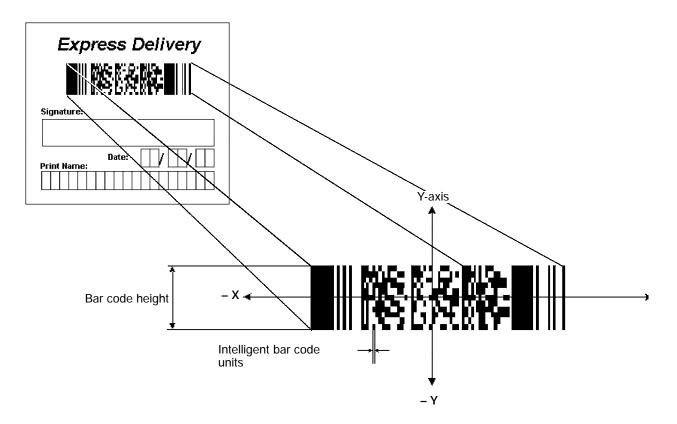
Image Acquisition Features

The integrated imager provides the following image acquisition features:

- Real-time and Still Image Acquisition: This includes functions that start and stop image acquisition and read acquired images.
- Signature Capture:

This allows the application to retrieve an image of the normalized signature. This means the image is always oriented as if the picture were taken at right angles to the signature, at the same distance, and in the center of the image no matter in what orientation the picture was taken.

Signature capture requires a PDF 417 or Code 128 bar code symbology to be present in the image and requires the application to identify the X,Y offsets relative to the center the bar code, the X,Y dimension of image to be captured, and the aspect ratio of the bar code. Note the units are in terms of the narrow element width of the bar code. See the following example signature capture label and dimensions. These image acquisition features are provided through the IImage Interface defined on page 221.



Create and Delete ADC COM Object Functions

Use these functions to create and release ADC COM interfaces. ITCDEVMGMT.H is the header file and ITCDEVMGMT.LIB is the library.

ITCDeviceOpen

This function opens and initializes a communication channel to the device. In C++, this function returns a pointer to an interface on which the methods are called. In C, this function returns a handle, which is the first parameter in each of the interface function calls.

Syntax

```
HRESULT ITCDeviceOpen( LPCTSTR pszDeviceName, REFIID iid,
ITC_DEVICE_FLAGS eDeviceFlags, void** ppvObject );
```

Parameters

pszDevice	[in]	Pointer to a string that contains the device name on which to initialize the logical connection. The device name (Merlin 1) identifies a communications port. Use "default" for all internal scanners, such as Imager, SE900, etc. Use "ExtScanner" for tethered scanners.
iid	[in]	The identifier of the interface being requested.
eDeviceFlags	[in]	 Enumeration that identifies the read characteristics as follows: ITC_DHDEVFLAG_READAHEAD Data is buffered on behalf of the calling applications. Data Buffering starts after the first call to IADC::Read (). ITC_DHDEVFLAG_NODATA The client application is managing the device to set its configuration or control its interface but not to collect data from the device.
ppvObject	[out]	A pointer to the interface pointer identified by <i>iid</i> . If the object does not support this interface, <i>ppvObject</i> is set to NULL.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

See Also

ITCDeviceClose

ITCDeviceClose

This function closes the interface opened with ITCDeviceOpen.

Syntax:

HRESULT ITCDeviceClose (IUnknown** ppvObject);

Parameters

ppvObject [in,out] A pointer to the interface pointer created by ITCDeviceOpen. If successful on output, this pointer is set to NULL.

Return Values

None.

Remarks

On Windows, this interface decrements the reference count. So alternatively, IUnknown::Release() could be used and must be used if reference counting is performed with IUnknown::AddRef(). On DOS, this function closes all resources associated with the channel.

See Also

None.

IADC Functions

IADC functions provide ADC data in an input device independent manner. This interface can receive bar code data, RFID data, and other ADC data from data collection engines, such as a bar code scanner. Use IADC functions if bar code specifics such as symbology are not important to the application.

IADC functions are the following. IADC.H is the header file and ITCUUID.LIB contains the IID_IADC Interface GUID value used to obtain the interface.

- IADC::CancelReadRequest (page 152)
- IADC::Initialize (page 153)
- IADC::QueryAttribute (page 154)
- IADC::QueryData (page 155)
- IADC::Read (page 156)
- IADC::SetAttribute (page 157)

IADC::CancelReadRequest

This function cancels a pending Read() request. This call can be made on a separate thread as a Read() or on the same thread. On a separate thread, the function is useful in unblocking a blocked Read() so that other operations can be performed. On the same thread, this function is useful in stopping data from being collected on behalf of a Read Ahead Client.

Syntax

HRESULT	IADC::CancelReadRed	quest (BOOL	FlushBufferedData,W	VORD
*pwTota.	lDiscardedMessages,	DWORD	*pdw1	TotalDiscardedBytes);

Parameters

FlushBufferedData	[in]	True	Flush and discard all already buffered data.
		False	Do not discard data, data will be returned on the next read call.
pwTotalDiscardedMessag	es [in/c	out]	Total number of discarded buffered labels or tags.
pdwTotalDiscardedBytes			Total number of discarded bytes.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

The return value indicates whether a read was pending.

- IADC::Initialize
- IADC::QueryAttribute
- IADC::QueryData
- IADC::Read
- IADC::SetAttribute

IADC::Initialize

This function initializes a connection by opening a communications channel with a logical reader engine. The communications port is implicitly identified. This communication channel is required to collect data or configure the device.

Syntax

HRESULT IADC::Initialize (LPCTSTR pszDeviceName, ITC_DEVICE_FLAGS eDeviceFlags) ;

Parameters

pszDeviceName	[in]	Pointer to a string that contains the device name on which to initialize the logical connection. The device name (Merlin 1) identifies a communications port. Use "default" for all internal scanners, such as Imager, SE900, etc. Use "ExtScanner" for
		tethered scanners.
eDeviceFlags	[in]	Enumeration that identifies the read characteristic as follows:

• ITC_DHDEVFLAG_READAHEAD Data is buffered on behalf of the calling application. Data buffering starts after the first call to IADC::Read ().

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

- IADC::CancelReadRequest
- IADC::QueryAttribute
- IADC::QueryData
- IADC::Read
- IADC::SetAttribute

IADC::QueryAttribute

This function retrieves a specified attribute that is device-independent. The specified attribute can be a grid or multiclient enable status.

Syntax

```
HRESULT IADC::QueryAttribute (
ITC_ADC_ATTRIBUTE_ID_eAttribID, BYTE_rgbBuffer[], DWORD
dwBufferSize, DWORD *pnBufferData );
```

Parameters

eAttribID	[in]	Specifies the attribute. Only one attribute can be queried at a time. See IADC::SetAttribute.
rgbBuffer	[out]	Contains buffer for the attribute to be queried. The structure of <i>lpBuffer</i> depends on the attribute being queried. See IADC::SetAttribute for a description of these structures.
dwBufferSize	[in]	The maximum number of bytes <i>rgbBuffer</i> can store.
pnBufferData [c	out]	Pointer to the DWORD location to put the number of bytes stored in <i>rgbBuffer</i> .

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

- IADC::CancelReadRequest
- IADC::Initialize
- IADC::QueryData
- IADC::Read
- IADC::SetAttribute

IADC::QueryData

This function returns the status of user input data that has been buffered.

Syntax

HRESULT IADC::QueryData (DWORD *dwTotalBufferedBytes, WORD *wNumberOfMessages, DWORD *dwNextMessageSize);

Parameters

dwTotalBufferedBytes	[out]	Total bytes buffered for connection.
wNumberOfMessages	[out]	Total messages buffered. For example, each buffer contains a single bar code scan.
dwNextMessageSize	[out]	Size (in bytes) of the next buffered message.

Return Values

A standard status code that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

- IADC::CancelReadRequest
- IADC::Initialize
- IADC::QueryAttribute
- IADC::Read
- IADC::SetAttribute

IADC::Read

This function requests user input data from the reader engine. This is a blocking function that returns either when there is data or after a timeout.

Syntax

```
HRESULT IADC::Read ( BYTE rgbDataBuffer[], DWORD
dwDataBufferSize, DWORD pnBytesReturned, SYSTEMTIME
pSystemTime, DWORD dwTimeout );
```

Parameters

rgbDataBuffer	[in]	Pointer to the buffer that receives the data from the device.
dwDataBufferSize	[in]	Maximum number of bytes that can be stored in <i>rgbDataBuffer</i> .
pnBytesReturned	[out]	Pointer to the DWORD location to store the number of bytes returned in <i>rgbDataBuffer</i> .
pSystemTime	[out]	Pointer to a SYSTEMTIME structure that will hold the time stamp of the received data. This can be NULL if a timestamp is not needed.
dw Timeout	[in]	 Number of milliseconds caller waits for data. This parameter is ignored if the Read Ahead flag is not set. 0 If data is not available, returns quickly. INFINITE Waits until data is available.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

- IADC::CancelReadRequest
- IADC::Initialize
- IADC::QueryAttribute
- IADC::QueryData
- IADC::SetAttribute

IADC::SetAttribute

This function changes an attribute such as a grid specification.

Syntax

```
HRESULT IADC::SetAttribute ( ITC_ADC_ATTRIBUTE_ID eAttribID,
BYTE rgbData[], DWORD nBufferSize );
```

Parameters

eAttribID	[in]	 Identifies the attribute to set. Only one attribute can be set at a time. The attribute is: ITC_MULTICLIENT_ENABLE Indicates whether this client can coexist with other clients.
rgbData	[in]	Contains data for the attribute to be set. Depending on the <i>eAttribID</i> , this will be mapped to the appropriate structure as follows:

- ITC_MULTICLIENT_ENABLE BOOL is the *rgbData* Data Structure.
 - TRUE, Client can receive data with other clients (*default*).
 - FALSE, Data stream to this client is turned off when there are other clients.
- ITC_DHATTR_READFILTER ITC_READFILTER is the *rgbData* Data Structure. The ITC_READFILE structure is defined in IADCDEVICE.H as follows:

typedef struct

```
{
```

```
#define ITC_MAXFILTER_CHARS 240
WORD nFilterChars;
TCHAR szFilter[ITC_MAXFILTER_CHARS];
} ITC READFILTER;
```

where:

• ITC_MAXFILTER_CHARS

- Maximum number of characters in a filter specification. Includes NULL termination.
- *nFilterChars* Number of characters in *pszDataMask*.
- *szFilter* Data mask specification. See "*Grid Data Filtering*."

nBufferSize [in] Number of bytes in *rgbData*.

ITC_DHATTR_READFILTER

Regular expression that performs data filtering and data editing. See "Grid Data Filtering" on page 141 for more information.

Return Values

A standard status code that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

- IADC::CancelReadRequest
- IADC::Initialize
- IADC::QueryAttribute
- IADC::QueryData
- IADC::Read

IBarCodeReaderControl Functions

IBarCodeReaderControl functions provide functionality for bar code collection and control only. These functions allow an application to:

- Trigger the bar code laser scanner
- Disable the scanner
- Receive a bar code with details such as symbology scanned, data type (Unicode, ASCII), and the time the data was received.

These functions include the following. IBARCODEREADER.H is the header file and ITCUUID.LIB contains the IID_IADC Interface GUID value used to obtain the interface.

- IBarCodeReaderControl::CancelReadRequest (page 160)
- IBarCodeReaderControl::ControlLED (page 161)
- IBarCodeReaderControl::Initialize (page 162)
- IBarCodeReaderControl::IssueBeep (page 163)
- IBarCodeReaderControl::QueryAttribute (page 164)
- IBarCodeReaderControl::Read (page 165)
- IBarCodeReaderControl::SetAttribute (page 167)
- IBarCodeReaderControl::TriggerScanner (page 171)

IBarCodeReaderControl::CancelReadRequest

This function cancels a pending IBarCodeReaderControl::Read request. If the read request is blocked, issue the CancelReadRequest from a separate thread.

Syntax

HRESULT IBarCodeReaderControl::CancelReadRequest(BOOL
FlushBufferedData, WORD *pwTotalDiscardedMessages,WORD
*pwTotalDiscardedBytes);

Parameters

[in]	TRUE	Flushes and discards all buffered data.
	FALSE	Does not discard data; data will be returned on the next read call.
s [in/o	Total number of discarded buffered labels or tags.	
		Total number of discarded bytes.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

- IBarCodeReaderControl::ControlLED
- IBarCodeReaderControl::Initialize
- IBarCodeReaderControl::IssueBeep
- IBarCodeReaderControl::QueryAttribute
- IBarCodeReaderControl::Read
- IBarCodeReaderControl::SetAttribute
- IBarCodeReaderControl::TriggerScanner

IBarCodeReaderControl::ControlLED

This function controls LED illumination on a tethered scanner. The good read LED and any valid LEDs will be turned on and off based on defined parameters.

Syntax

HRESULT IBarCodeReaderControl::ControlLED(
ITC BARCODE LASER LED ID eLED, BOOL fLedOn);

Parameters

eLED

[in] The specified LED identifier.

• ITC_BARCODE_LASER_GOOD_READ_LED Identifies the good read LED.

fLedOn [in] TRUE turns on the LED. FALSE turns off the LED.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

This function does not coordinate LED control with the scanner. If the scanner LED control is enabled, function results will be unpredictable.

- IBarCodeReaderControl::CancelReadRequest
- IBarCodeReaderControl::Initialize
- IBarCodeReaderControl::IssueBeep
- IBarCodeReaderControl::QueryAttribute
- IBarCodeReaderControl::Read
- IBarCodeReaderControl::SetAttribute
- IBarCodeReaderControl::TriggerScanner

IBarCodeReaderControl::Initialize

This function opens and initializes a communications channel with a logical bar code reader engine.

Syntax

HRESULT IBarCodeReaderControl::Initialize (LPCTSTR
pszDeviceName, ITC DEVICE FLAGS eDeviceFlags) ;

Parameters

pszDeviceName	[in]	Pointer to a string with device on which to initialize the logical connection. The device identifies a communications port. Use "default" for all internal scanners, such as Imager, SE900, etc. Use "ExtScanner" for tethered scanners.
eDeviceFlags	[in]	 Enumeration that identifies the read characteristic as follows: ITC_DHDEVFLAG_READAHEAD Data is buffered on behalf of the calling

applications. Data Buffering starts after the

first call to IADC::Read ().

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

- IBarCodeReaderControl::CancelReadRequest
- IBarCodeReaderControl::ControlLED
- IBarCodeReaderControl::IssueBeep
- IBarCodeReaderControl::QueryAttribute
- IBarCodeReaderControl::Read
- IBarCodeReaderControl::SetAttribute
- IBarCodeReaderControl::TriggerScanner

IBarCodeReaderControl::IssueBeep

This function causes the reader engine to generate a high beep, a low beep, or a custom beep. The high beep and low beep are preconfigured beep tones and durations. The custom beep allows the client to specify the frequency and duration. The volume is the current volume setting. *Note this is not implemented.*

Syntax

HRESULT IBarCodeReaderControl::IssueBeep(ITC_BEEP_SPEC rgBeepRequests[], DWORD dwNumberOfBeeps);

Parameters

rgBeepRequests

[in] Array of ITC_BEEP_SPEC structures that identifies the beep type. The beep structure is:

typedef struct tagITCBeepSpec
{
ITC_BEEP_TYPE eBeepType; // Identifies the type of beep
// Following fields used only if the beep type is ITC_CUSTOM_BEEP.
WORD wPitch; // Frequency, in Hz, of the beep.
WORD wOnDuration; // Duration, in milliseconds, of Beep On.
WORD wOffDuration; // Duration, in milliseconds, of Beep Off
// Beep Off is used to separate individual beeps
} ITC_BEEP_SPEC;
typedef enum tagITCBeepType
{
ITC_LOW_BEEP, // Issue the default low beep.
ITC_HIGH_BEEP, // Issue the default high beep.
ITC_CUSTOM_BEEP, // Issue a custom beep.
} ITC_BEEP_TYPE;

dwNumberOfBeeps

[in] Identifies the total number of beeps in *rgBeepRequests*.

Return Values

E_NOTIMPL as this function is not implemented.

Remarks

None.

- IBarCodeReaderControl::CancelReadRequest
- IBarCodeReaderControl::ControlLED
- IBarCodeReaderControl::Initialize
- IBarCodeReaderControl::QueryAttribute
- IBarCodeReaderControl::Read
- IBarCodeReaderControl::SetAttribute
- IBarCodeReaderControl::TriggerScanner

IBarCodeReaderControl::QueryAttribute

This function retrieves the device-specific grid, the scanner enable status, and the LED control status for the current bar code reader engine.

Syntax

HRESULT IBarCodeReaderControl::QueryAttribute (
ITC_BARCODEREADER_ATTRIBUTE_ID_eAttr, BYTE_rgbAttrBuffer[],
DWORD_dwAttrBufferSize);

Parameters

eAttr	[in]	Specifies the attribute. See IBarCodeReaderControl::SetAttribute on page 167 for the attributes.
rgbAttrBuffer	[out]	Contains buffer for the attribute to be queried. The structure of <i>rgbAttrBuffer</i> depends on the attribute being queried. See IBarCodeReaderControl::SetAttribute for a description of these structures.
dwAttrBufferSize	[in]	The maximum number of bytes that <i>rgbAttrBuffer</i> can store.

Return Values

A standard status code that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

The following attributes are not supported on the imager:

- ITC_RDRATTR_TONE_ENABLE
- ITC_RDRATTR_VOLUME_LEVEL
- ITC_RDRATTR_TONE_FREQUENCY
- ITC_RDRATTR_GOOD_READ_BEEPS_NUMBER
- ITC_RDRATTR_GOOD_READ_BEEP_DURATION

- IBarCodeReaderControl::CancelReadRequest
- IBarCodeReaderControl::ControlLED
- IBarCodeReaderControl::Initialize
- IBarCodeReaderControl::IssueBeep
- IBarCodeReaderControl::Read
- IBarCodeReaderControl::SetAttribute
- IBarCodeReaderControl::TriggerScanner

IBarCodeReaderControl::Read

This function reads data from the bar code input device. This method performs the same function as IADC::Read () except that it provides additional information about data received such as bar code symbology used, data type, and time stamp of received data.

Syntax

HRESULT IBarCodeReaderControl::Read (BYTE
rgbDataBuffer[],DWORD dwDataBufferSize, DWORD
pnBytesReturned,ITC_BARCODE_DATA_DETAILS
pBarCodeDataDetails, DWORD dwTimeout);

Parameters

rgbDataBuffer	[in]	Pointer to the buffer that receives data from the device.
dwDataBufferSize	[in]	Maximum number of bytes that can be stored in <i>rgbDataBuffer</i> .
pnBytesReturned	[out]	Pointer to the DWORD location that will store the bytes returned in <i>rgbDataBuffer</i> .
pBarCodeDataDetails	[in]	Address of data structure in which to put the data details. This may be NULL. The ITC_BARCODE_DATA_DETAILS is:

typedef struct tagITCBarCodeDetails

{

```
WORD wStructSize,
ITC_BARCODE_SYMBOLOGY_ID eSymbology,
ITC_BARCODE_DATATYPE eDataType,
SYSTEMTIME stTimeStamp,
}ITC_BARCODE_DATA_DETAILS;
```

typedef enum tagBarCodeDataType

{

BARCODE_DATA_TYPE_UNKNOWN = 1, BARCODE_DATA_TYPE_ASCII, BARCODE_DATA_TYPE_UNICODE, }ITC_BARCODE_DATATYPE;

where:

- *wStructSize* Size of structure. Used for versioning structure.
- *eSymbology* Symbology of the returned data.
- *eDataType* Identifies data types as ASCII, UNICODE, etc.
- *stTimeStamp* Timestamp of the received data.
- BARCODE_DATA_TYPE_UNKNOWN Data in unknown.
- BARCODE_DATA_TYPE_ASCII Data is ASCII.
- **BARCODE_DATA_TYPE_UNICODE** Data is UNICODE.

dwTimeout

[in]

Number of milliseconds caller waits for data. If you set a timeout, the call will be blocked until data is received.

- 0
 - If data not available, returns quickly.
- INFINITE Waits until data is available.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

- IBarCodeReaderControl::CancelReadRequest
- IBarCodeReaderControl::ControlLED
- IBarCodeReaderControl::Initialize
- IBarCodeReaderControl::IssueBeep
- IBarCodeReaderControl::QueryAttribute
- IBarCodeReaderControl::SetAttribute
- IBarCodeReaderControl::TriggerScanner

IBarCodeReaderControl::SetAttribute

This function enables and disables the laser scanner, sets the bar code reader engine specific grid, and enables or disables the reader engine LED control.

Syntax

HRESULT IBarCodeReaderControl::SetAttribute (
ITC_BARCODEREADER_ATTRIBUTE_ID_eAttr, BYTE_rgbAttrBuffer[],
DWORD_dwAttrBufferSize);

Parameters

- *eAttr* [in] Identifies the attribute to set. Only one attribute can be set at a time. The attributes are:
 - ITC_RDRATTR_SCANNER_ENABLE Enable or disable scanner for all connections.
 - ITC_RDRATTR_GOOD_READ_LED_ENABLE Enables and disables the reader engine from controlling the good read LED.
 - ITC_RDRATTR_TONE_ENABLE Enables and disables the reader engine from issuing beeps.
 - ITC_RDRATTR_VOLUME_LEVEL Sets beep volume level.
 - ITC_RDRATTR_TONE_FREQUENCY Sets beep frequency.
 - ITC_RDRATTR_GOOD_READ_BEEPS_NUMBER Sets number of beeps for a good read.
 - ITC_RDRATTR_GOOD_READ_BEEP_DURATION Sets duration of beeps for a good read.
 - ITC_DHATTR_READFILTER The ITC_READFILTER is the *rgbData* Data Structure. The ITC_READFILE structure is defined in IADCDEVICE.H as follows:

```
typedef struct
```

```
{
   #define ITC_MAXFILTER_CHARS 240
   WORD nFilterChars;
   TCHAR szFilter[ITC_MAXFILTER_CHARS];
}
```

```
} ITC_READFILTER;
```

where:

- *nFilterChars* Number of characters in *pszDataMask*.
- *szFilter* Data mask specification. See "*Grid Data Filtering*."
- ITC_MAXFILTER_CHARS

Maximum number of characters in a filter specification. Includes NULL termination.

rgbAttrBuffer [in] Contains data for the attribute to be set. Depending on *eAttr*, the *rgbAttrData* will be mapped to the appropriate structure as shown in the following table.

rgbAttrBuffer Data Structures

eAttr	Data Structure contained in rgbAttrBuffer
ITC_RDRATTR_GRID	ITC_BARCODEREADER_READER_GRID Reader Engine specific grid only.
ITC_RDRATTR_SCANNER_ENABLE	BOOL TRUE Enable scanner. FALSE Disable scanner.
ITC_RDRATTR_GOOD_READ_LED_ENABLE	BOOLTRUEReader Engine controls good read LED.FALSEGood read LED is not controlled.
ITC_RDRATTR_DATA_VALID_LED_ENABLE	BOOLTRUEReader Engine controls data valid LED.FALSEData valid LED is not controlled.
ITC_RDRATTR_TONE_ENABLE	BOOLTRUEReader Engine issues beeps.FALSEBeeps are not issued.
ITC_RDRATTR_VOLUME_LEVEL	ITC_BEEP_VOLUME An enumerator that identifies the beep volume level con- trol. Valid range for S9C: typedef enum tagBeepVolume { ITC_BEEP_VOLUME_LOW = 0, ITC_BEEP_VOLUME_MEDIUM = 2, ITC_BEEP_VOLUME_MEDIUM = 1 //Default }ITC_BEEP_VOLUME_HIGH = 1 //Default }ITC_BEEP_VOLUME Note: Due to the hardware design on this 700 Series Com- puter, the volume level can be either OFF (ITC_BEEP_VOLUME_LOW) or ON (ITC_BEEP_VOLUME_MEDIUM/HIGH).
ITC_RDRATTR_TONE_FREQUENCY	DWORD A value that identifies the tone frequency in Hz. Valid range for S9C: 1000`4095 Hz (default: 2090). Note: Value is divided by 10 for storage. On retrieval, the scanner rounds off the value to the nearest 10 Hz, then mul- tiplies the value by 10. For example, the value sent to the scanner is 2095. On retrieval, the value returned is 2090.

eAttr	Data Structure contained in rgbAttrBuffer
ITC_RDRATTR_GOOD_READ_BEEPS_NUMBER	<pre>ITC_GOOD_READ_BEEPS_NUMBER An enumerator identifying the good read beeps number. Valid range for S9C: typedef enum tagGoodReadBeepsNumber { ITC_NUM_BEEPS_NONE = 0, ITC_NUM_BEEPS_ONE = 1, // Defaul t ITC_NUM_BEEPS_TWO = 2 }ITC_GOOD_READ_BEEPS_NUMBER</pre>
ITC_RDRATTR_GOOD_READ_BEEP_DURATION	DWORD Value identifying the good read beep duration in ms. Valid range for S9C: 0`2550 ms (Default: 80). Note: Value is divided by 10 for storage. On retrieval, the scanner rounds the value to the nearest 10 ms, then multi- plies the value by 10.

rgbAttrBuffer Data Structures (continued)

dwAttrBufferSize [in] The size of *rgbAttrBuffer* in bytes.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

Read ahead and non-read ahead clients can change the grid. Since changing the grid changes the entire reader engine grid, use IBarCodeReaderControl::QueryAttribute to retrieve the current reader engine grid and grid changes before sending back using SetAttribute. The grid structure is *typedef struct tagBarCodeReaderGrid*.

```
{
ITC_DI_GRID stDIGrid; // Device independent grid.
ITC_DDBARCODE_GRID stDDGrid; // Reader engine dependent grid
DWORD dwDataSourceTypeMask;
} ITC_BARCODEREADER_GRID;
```

ITC_DI_GRID

```
typedef struct tagItcBarCodeGrid
{
DWORD dwSymbologyMask; // Symbologies to be received.
} ITC_DDBARCODE_GRID;
```

When the scanner is enabled, it scans when the scan button is pressed or the trigger is pulled. When the scanner is disabled, it does not respond when the scan button is pressed or the trigger is pulled. The following attributes are not supported on the imager:

- ITC_RDRATTR_TONE_ENABLE
- ITC_RDRATTR_VOLUME_LEVEL
- ITC_RDRATTR_TONE_FREQUENCY
- ITC_RDRATTR_GOOD_READ_BEEPS_NUMBER
- ITC_RDRATTR_GOOD_READ_BEEP_DURATION

- IBarCodeReaderControl::CancelReadRequest
- IBarCodeReaderControl::ControlLED
- IBarCodeReaderControl::Initialize
- IBarCodeReaderControl::IssueBeep
- IBarCodeReaderControl::QueryAttribute
- IBarCodeReaderControl::Read
- IBarCodeReaderControl::TriggerScanner

IBarCodeReaderControl::TriggerScanner

This function turns the scanner on and off. The client application must coordinate control of the scanner with the user.

Syntax

HRESULT IBarCodeReaderControl::TriggerScanner (BOOL
fScannerOn);

Parameters

fScannerOn

[in] Set TRUE to turn the scanner on. Set FALSE to turn the scanner off.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

The scanner will be turned on or off independent of the actions of the users. The client application must coordinate control of the scanner with the user. When the scanner is turned on, its behavior is controlled by the trigger mode. That is, in one shot mode, the laser turns off when a label is scanned; in auto-trigger mode, the laser remains on.

- IBarCodeReaderControl::CancelReadRequest
- IBarCodeReaderControl::ControlLED
- IBarCodeReaderControl::Initialize
- IBarCodeReaderControl::IssueBeep
- IBarCodeReaderControl::QueryAttribute
- IBarCodeReaderControl::Read
- IBarCodeReaderControl::SetAttribute

IS9CConfig Functions

This interface provides methods to set and retrieve the 700 Series Computer bar code configuration. All supported symbologies are initialized to their defaults when the S9C firmware is loaded.

GET/SET functions use enumerations as their parameters. In most enumerations, there is an enumerator xx_NO_CHANGE (such as ITC_CODE39_NO_CHANGE), where xx refers to a particular enumeration. This enumerator can be used during a call to a SET to indicate that no change is to be made to that particular parameter. This prevents the called function from having to format the same S9C command and send down to the S9C scanner.

For all symbologies, to set a bar code length of "any length," use a value of "0" for the bar code length argument.

IS9CConfig functions are the following. IS9CCONFIG.H is the header file and ITCUUID.LIB contains the IID_IADC Interface GUID value used to obtain the interface.

- IS9CConfig::GetCodabar (page 173)
- IS9CConfig::SetCodabar (page 174)
- IS9CConfig::GetCode39 (page 176)
- IS9CConfig::SetCode39 (page 177)
- IS9CConfig::GetCode93 (page 179)
- IS9CConfig::SetCode93 (page 179)
- IS9CConfig::GetCode128 (page 180)
- IS9CConfig::SetCode128 (page 181)
- IS9CConfig::GetI2of5 (page 183)
- IS9CConfig::SetI2of5 (page 184)
- IS9CConfig::GetMatrix2of5 (page 185)
- IS9CConfig::SetMatrix2of5 (page 186)
- IS9CConfig::GetMSI (page 187)
- IS9CConfig::SetMSI (page 187)
- IS9CConfig::GetPDF417 (page 188)
- IS9CConfig::SetPDF417 (page 189)
- IS9CConfig::GetPlessey (page 192)
- IS9CConfig::SetPlessey (page 192)
- IS9CConfig::GetStandard2of5 (page 194)
- IS9CConfig::SetStandard2of5 (page 195)
- IS9CConfig::GetTelepen (page 197)
- IS9CConfig::SetTelepen (page 197)
- IS9CConfig::GetUpcEan (page 198)
- IS9CConfig::SetUpcEan (page 200)

IS9CConfig::GetCodabar

This function retrieves the current settings of Codabar symbology.

Syntax

HRESULT IS9CConfig::GetCodabar(ITC_CODABAR_DECODING*
peDecode, ITC_CODABAR_START_STOP* peSS, ITC_CODABAR_CLSI*
peCLSI, ITC_CODABAR_CHECK_DIGIT* peCheck,
ITC_BARCODE_LENGTH_ID* peLengthId, BYTE rgbLengthBuff[],
DWORD* pdwNumBytes);

Parameters

peDecode	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_CODABAR_DECODING location to receive the decoding for Codabar symbology.
peSS	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_CODABAR_START_STOP location to receive the Start/Stop option.
peCLSI	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_CODABAR_CLSI location to receive the CLSI library system.
peCheck	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_CODABAR_CHECK_DIGIT location to receive the check digit.
peLengthId	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_BARCODE_LENGTH_ID location to receive an indicator of either ITC_BARCODE_LENGTH or ITC_BARCODE_FIXED_LENGTH.
rgbLengthBuff	[out,size	e_is(3)] An array of bytes to receive 1 byte of data for ITC_BARCODE_LENGTH, or 3 bytes of data for ITC_BARCODE_FIXED_LENGTH.
pdwNumBytes	[out]	Pointer to the DWORD location to receive a number indicating number of bytes in <i>rbgLengthBuff[]</i> : 1 byte for ITC_BARCODE_LENGTH or 3 bytes for ITC_BARCODE_FIXED_LENGTH.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

See Also

IS9CConfig::SetCodabar

This function updates the Codabar settings with new values.

Syntax

HRESULT IS9CConfig::SetCodabar(ITC_CODABAR_DECODING eDecode, ITC_CODABAR_START_STOP eSS, ITC_CODABAR_CLSI eCLSI,ITC_CODABAR_CHECK_DIGIT eCheck, ITC_BARCODE_LENGTH_ID eLengthId, BYTE rgbLengthBuff[],DWORD dwNumBytes);

Parameters

i aranieters			
eDecode	[in]	Identifies the decoding for Codabar symbology.	
eSS	[in]	Identifies the Start/Stop option.	
eCLSI	[in]	Identifies the CLSI library system.	
eCheck	[in]	Identifies the check digit.	
eLengthId	[in]	Use ITC_BARCODE_LENGTH_NO_CHANGE to indicate no change for bar code length. Use ITC_BARCODE_LENGTH for any length and minimum length, and set <i>rgbLengthBuff[0]</i> to a valid length value. Use ITC_BARCODE_FIXED_LENGTH to compose 1 or 2 or 3 fixed lengths, and set 3 bytes: <i>rgbLengthBuff[0]</i> , <i>rgbLengthBuff[1]</i> , <i>rgbLengthBuff[2]</i> with valid values.	
rgbLengthBuff	[in,s	ize_is(dwNumBytes)] An array of bytes containing bar code lengths when <i>eLengthId</i> = ITC_BARCODE_LENGTH or ITC_BARCODE_FIXED_LENGTH.	
dwNumBytes	[in]	Number of bytes in <i>rbgLengthBuff[]</i> . For S9C, this value is 1 when <i>eLengthId</i> = ITC_BARCODE_LENGTH or 3 when <i>eLengthId</i> = ITC_BARCODE_FIXED_LENGTH	

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

See Also

Codabar Default Settings

Parameter	Default	Valid Range
Decode	Not Active	ITC_CODABAR_DECODING
CLSI Library System	Not Active	ITC_CODABAR_CLSI
Start/Stop	Not Transmitted	ITC_CODABAR_START_STOP
Check Digit	Not Used	ITC_CODABAR_CHECK_DIGIT
Bar Code Length	Minimum Length = 6	0x00`0xFE ITC_BC_LENGTH_NO_CHANGE

Codabar Enumerations

<pre>typedef enum tagCodabarDecoding {</pre>		
<pre>ITC_CODABAR_NOTACTIVE = 0, ITC_CODABAR_ACTIVE = 1, ITC_CODABAR_NO_CHANGE = 255 } ITC_CODABAR_DECODING;</pre>		// Default
typedef enum tagCodabarStartStop		
ITC_CODABAR_SS_NOTXMIT, ITC_CODABAR_SS_LOWERABCD, ITC_CODABAR_SS_UPPERABCD, ITC_CODABAR_SS_LOWERABCDTN,	 	Default a,b,c,d A,B,C,D a,b,c,d / t,n,*,e DC1,DC2,DC3,DC4
typedef enum tagCodabarClsi		
<pre>ITC_CODABAR_CLSI_NOTACTIVE = 0, ITC_CODABAR_CLSI_ACTIVE = 1, ITC_CODABAR_CLSI_NO_CHANGE = 255 } ITC_CODABAR_CLSI;</pre>	//	Default
<pre>typedef enum tagCodabarCheckDigit {</pre>		
ITC_CODABAR_CHECK_NOTUSED, ITC_CODABAR_CHECK_XMIT, ITC_CODABAR_CHECK_NOTXMIT, ITC_CODABAR_CHECK_NO_CHANGE = 255 } ITC_CODABAR_CHECK_DIGIT;		// Default
typedef enum tagBarcodeLengthId		
<pre>{ ITC_BARCODE_LENGTH = 0, ITC_BARCODE_FIXED_LENGTH, ITC_BARCODE_LENGTH_NO_CHANGE = 255 } ITC_BARCODE_LENGTH_ID;</pre>	5	

IS9CConfig::GetCode39

This function retrieves the current settings of Code 39.

Syntax

```
HRESULT IS9Cconfig::GetCode39( ITC_CODE39_DECODING*
peDecode, ITC_CODE39_FORMAT* peFormat,
ITC_CODE39_START_STOP* peSS,ITC_CODE39_SS_CHARS* peSSChars,
ITC_CODE39_CHECK_DIGIT* peCheck, DWORD* pwLength );
```

Parameters

peDecode	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_CODE39_DECODING location to receive the decoding for Code 39.
peFormat	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_CODE39_FORMAT location to receive the Code 39 format.
peSS	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_CODE39_START_STOP location to receive the Code 39 start/stop.
peSSChars	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_CODE39_SS_CHARS location to receive the Start/Stop character.
peCheck	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_CODE39_CHECK_DIGIT location to receive the check digit.
pwLength	[out]	Pointer to the DWORD location to receive the bar code length.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

See Also

IS9CConfig::SetCode39

This function updates the Code 39 settings with new values.

Syntax

HRESULT **IS9CConfig::SetCode39(** ITC_CODE39_DECODING eDecode,ITC_CODE39_FORMAT eFormat, ITC_CODE39_START_STOP eSS,ITC_CODE39_SS_CHARS_eSSChars, ITC_CODE39_CHECK_DIGIT eCheck, DWORD_dwLength);

Parameters

eDecode	[in]	Identifies the decoding for Code 39.
eFormat	[in]	Identifies the Code 39 Format.
eSS	[in]	Identifies the Start/Stop option.
eSSChars	[in]	Identifies the Start/Stop character.
eCheck	[in]	Identifies the Check digit.
dwLength	[in]	Identifies the bar code length.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

See Also

None.

Code 39 Default Settings

Parameter	Default	Valid Range
Decoding	Active	ITC_CODE39_DECODING
Format	Standard 43 Character	ITC_CODE39_FORMAT
Start/Stop	Not Transmitted	ITC_CODE39_START_STOP
Accepted Start/stop Characters	* only	ITC_CODE39_SS_CHARS
Check Digit	Not Used	ITC_CODE39_CHECK_DIGIT
Bar Code Length	Any Bar Code Length	0x00`0xFE ITC_BC_LENGTH_NO_CHANGE

Code 39 Enumerations

typedef enum tagCode39Decoding { ITC CODE39 NOTACTIVE = 0, ITC CODE39 ACTIVE = 1, // Default ITC CODE39 NO CHANGE = 255 } ITC CODE39 DECODING; typedef enum tagCode39Format { // Default ITC CODE39 FORMAT STANDARD43, ITC_CODE39_FORMAT_FULLASCII, ITC CODE39 FORMAT NO CHANGE = 255 } ITC CODE39 FORMAT; typedef enum tagCode39StartStop { ITC CODE39 SS NOTXMIT, // Default ITC CODE39 SS XMIT, ITC CODE39 SS NO CHANGE = 255 } ITC CODE39 START STOP; typedef enum tagCode39StartStopChars { ITC CODE39 SS CHARS DOLLARSIGN, ITC CODE39 SS CHARS ASTERISK, // Default ITC CODE39 SS CHARS BOTH, ITC CODE39 SS CHARS NO CHANGE = 255 } ITC CODE39 SS CHARS; typedef enum tagCode39CheckDigit // Default ITC CODE39 CHECK NOTUSED, ITC CODE39 CHECK MOD43 XMIT, ITC_CODE39_CHECK_MOD43_NOTXMIT, ITC_CODE39_CHECK_FRENCH_CIP_XMIT, ITC_CODE39_CHECK_FRENCH_CIP_NOTXMIT, ITC_CODE39_CHECK_ITALIAN_CPI_XMIT, ITC_CODE39_CHECK_ITALIAN_CPI_NOTXMIT, ITC CODE39 CHECK NO CHANGE = 255} ITC CODE39 CHECK DIGIT;

IS9CConfig::GetCode93

This function retrieves the current settings of Code 93.

Syntax

HRESULT IS9CConfig::GetCode93(ITC_CODE93_DECODING*
peDecode, DWORD* pdwLength);

Parameters

peDecode	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_CODE93_DECODING location to receive the decoding for Code 93 symbology.
pdwLength	[out]	Pointer to the DWORD location to receive a value for bar code length.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

See Also

None.

IS9CConfig::SetCode93

This function updates the Code 93 settings with new values.

Syntax

```
HRESULT IS9CConfig::SetCode93( ITC_CODE93_DECODING
eDecode,DWORD dwLength );
```

Parameters

eDecode [in] Identifies the decoding for Code93 Symbology.dwLength [in] Identifies the bar code length.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

See Also

None.

Code 93 Default Settings

Parameter	Default	Valid Range	
Decoding	Not Active	ITC_CODE9	3_DECODING
Bar Code Length	Any Bar Code Length	0x00`0xFE	ITC_BC_LENGTH_NO_CHANGE

Code 93 Enumerations

Use this when the bar code length does not require any change.

```
typedef enum tagCode93Decoding
{
ITC_CODE93_NOTACTIVE = 0, // Default
ITC_CODE93_ACTIVE = 1,
ITC_CODE93_NO_CHANGE = 255
} ITC_CODE93_DECODING;
#define ITC_BC_LENGTH_NO_CHANGE 255.
```

IS9CConfig::GetCode128

This function retrieves the current settings of Code 128 symbology.

Syntax

```
HRESULT IS9Cconfig::GetCode128( ITC_CODE128_DECODING*
peDecode, ITC_EAN128_IDENTIFIER* peEan128Ident,
ITC_CODE128_CIP128 peCip128State, BYTE* pbyFNC1, DWORD*
pdwLength );
```

Parameters

peDecode	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_CODE128_DECODING location to receive the decoding for Code 128 symbology.
peEan128Ident	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_EAN128_IDENTIFIER location to receive the EAN 128 identifier.
peCip128State	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_CODE128_CIP128 location to receive the CIP 128.
pbyFNC1	[out]	Pointer to the BYTE location to receive the FNC1 separator character.
pdwLength	[out]	Pointer to the DWORD location to receive a value for bar code length.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

See Also

IS9CConfig::SetCode128

This function updates the Code 128 settings with new values.

Syntax

```
HRESULT IS9CConfig::SetCode128( ITC_CODE128_DECODING
eDecode, ITC_EAN128_IDENTIFIER eEan128Ident,
ITC_CODE128_CIP128 eCip128State, BYTE byFNC1, DWORD dwLength
);
```

Parameters

eDecode	[in]	Identifies the decoding for Code 128 symbology.
eEan128Ident	[in]	Identifies the EAN 128 identifier.
eCip128State	[in]	Identifies the CIP 128.
byFNC1	[in]	Identifies the FNC1 separator character, usually any ASCII value.
dwLength	[in]	Identifies the bar code length.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

See Also

None.

Code 128/EAN 128 Default Settings

Parameter	Default	Valid Range	2
Decoding	Not Active	ITC_CODE	128_DECODING
EAN 128 Identifier	Include]C1	ITC_EAN12	8_IDENTIFIER
CIP 128 French Pharmaceutical Codes	Not Active	ITC_CODE	128_CIP128
FNC1 Separator Character (EAN 128 norms)	GS function Char ASCII 29 or 0x1D	0x00`0xFE	ITC_CODE128_FNC1_NO_CHANGE
Bar Code Length	Any Bar Code Length	0x00`0xFE	ITC_BC_LENGTH_NO_CHANGE

Code 128 Enumerations

```
typedef enum tagCode128Decoding
ITC CODE128 NOTACTIVE = 0, // Default
ITC CODE128 ACTIVE = 1,
ITC CODE128 NO CHANGE = 255
} ITC CODE128 DECODING;
typedef enum tagEan128Identifier
ITC EAN128 ID REMOVE,
ITC_EAN128_ID_INCLUDE, // Default
ITC_EAN128_ID_NO_CHANGE = 255
} ITC_EAN128_IDENTIFIER;
typedef enum tagCode128Cip128
{
ITC CODE128 CIP128 NOTACTIVE = 0, // Default
ITC CODE128 CIP128 ACTIVE = 1,
ITC_CODE128_CIP128_NO_CHANGE = 255
} ITC CODE128 CIP128;
```

#define ITC_CODE128_FNC1_NO_CHANGE 255.
This definition can be used when the Code128 FNC1 does not require any change.

 $\# define \ \mbox{ITC} \ \mbox{BC} \ \mbox{LENGTH} \ \mbox{NO} \ \mbox{CHANGE} \ 255.$ This definition can be used when the bar code length does not require any change.

The table below shows what to be expected for EAN 128 labels for various symbology identifier transmit configurations and EAN 128 Identifier options.

Setup			Application's Expected	Result
EAN 1	28]C1 ID	Symbology ID option	EAN 128 Label	Other Labels
1	Include]C1	Disabled	<data></data>	<data></data>
2	Remove]C1	Disabled	<data></data>	<data></data>
3	Include]C1	AIM ID Transmitted]C1 <data></data>]XY <data></data>
4	Remove]C1	AID ID Transmitted]C1 <data></data>]XY <data></data>
5	Include]C1	Custom ID Transmitted	Z]C1 <data></data>	Z <data></data>
6	Remove]C1	Custom ID Transmitted	Z <data></data>	Z <data></data>
where	"X" is the symbology i	dentifier, "Y" is the modifier ch	aracter, and "Z" is the 1-byte s	ymbology identifier.

IS9CConfig::Getl2of5

This function retrieves the current settings of Interleaved 2 of 5.

Syntax

HRESULT IS9CConfig::GetI2of5(ITC_INTERLEAVED2OF5_DECODING* peDecode, ITC_INTERLEAVED2OF5_CHECK_DIGIT* peCheck, ITC_BARCODE_LENGTH_ID* peLengthId, BYTE rbgLengthBuff[], DWORD* pdwNumBytes);

Parameters

peDecode	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_INTERLEAVED2OF5_DECODING location to receive the decoding for Interleaved 2 of 5 symbology.
peCheck	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_INTERLEAVED2OF5_CHECK_DIGIT location to receive the check digit.
peLengthId	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_BARCODE_LENGTH_ID location to receive an indicator of either ITC_BARCODE_LENGTH or ITC_BARCODE_FIXED_LENGTH.
rgbLengthBuff	[out,siz	e_is(3)] An array of bytes to receives 1 byte of data for ITC_BARCODE_LENGTH or 3 bytes of data for ITC_BARCODE_FIXED_LENGTH.
pdwNumBytes	[out]	Pointer to the DWORD location to receive a number indicating number of bytes in <i>rbgLengthBuff[]</i> : 1 byte for ITC_BARCODE_LENGTH or 3 bytes for ITC_BARCODE_FIXED_LENGTH.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

See Also

IS9CConfig::SetI2of5

This function updates the Interleaved 2 of 5 settings with new values.

Syntax

HRESULT IS9CConfig::SetI2of5(ITC_INTERLEAVED2OF5_DECODING eDecode, ITC_INTERLEAVED2OF5_CHECK_DIGIT eCheck, ITC_BARCODE_LENGTH_ID_eLengthId, BYTE_rgbLengthBuff[], DWORD dwNumBytes);

Parameters

i arameters	F	
eDecode	[in]	Identifies the decoding for Interleaved 2 of 5 symbology.
eCheck	[in]	Identifies the check digit.
eLengthId	[in]	Use ITC_BARCODE_LENGTH_NO_CHANGE to indicate no change for bar code length. Use ITC_BARCODE_LENGTH for any length and minimum length, and set <i>rgbLengthBuff[0]</i> to a valid length value. Use ITC_BARCODE_FIXED_LENGTH to compose 1 or 2 or 3 fixed lengths, and set 3 bytes: <i>rgbLengthBuff[0]</i> , <i>rgbLengthBuff[1]</i> , <i>rgbLengthBuff[2]</i> with valid values.
rgbLengthBuff	[in,s	ize_is(dwNumBytes)] Contains bar code lengths when <i>eLengthId</i> = Use ITC_BARCODE_LENGTH or Use ITC_BARCODE_FIXED_LENGTH.
dwNumBytes	[in]	Number of bytes in <i>rbgLengthBuff[]</i> . For S9C, this value is 1 when <i>eLengthId</i> = ITC_BARCODE_LENGTH or 3 when <i>eLengthId</i> = ITC_BARCODE_FIXED_LENGTH.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

See Also

None.

Interleaved 2 of 5 Default Settings

Parameter	Default	Valid Range
Decoding	Not Active	ITC_INTERLEAVED2OF5_DECODING
Check Digit	Not Used	ITC_INTERLEAVED2OF5_CHECK_DIGIT
Bar Code Length	Minimum Length = 6	0x00`0xFE ITC_BC_LENGTH_NO_CHANGE

Interleaved 2 of 5 Enumerations

```
typedef enum tagInterleaved2of5Decoding
                                   // Default
ITC INTERLEAVED2OF5 NOTACTIVE = 0,
ITC INTERLEAVED2OF5 ACTIVE = 1,
ITC INTERLEAVED20F5 NO CHANGE = 255
} ITC INTERLEAVED20F5 DECODING;
typedef enum tagInterleaved2of5CheckDigit
ITC INTERLEAVED2OF5 CHECK NOTUSED,
                                       // Default
ITC_INTERLEAVED2OF5_CHECK_MOD10_XMIT,
ITC_INTERLEAVED2OF5_CHECK_MOD10_NOTXMIT,
ITC_INTERLEAVED2OF5_CHECK_FRENCH_CIP_XMIT,
ITC INTERLEAVED2OF5 CHECK FRENCH CIP NOTXMIT,
ITC INTERLEAVED20F5 CHECK NO CHANGE = 255
} ITC INTERLEAVED20F5 CHECK DIGIT;
typedef enum tagBarcodeLengthId
ITC BARCODE LENGTH = 0,
ITC BARCODE FIXED LENGTH,
ITC BARCODE LENGTH NO CHANGE = 255
} ITC BARCODE LENGTH ID;
```

IS9CConfig::GetMatrix2of5

This function retrieves the current settings of Matrix 2 of 5.

Syntax

HRESULT IS9CConfig::GetMatrix2of5(ITC_MATRIX2OF5_DECODING*
 peDecode, DWORD* pdwLength);

Parameters

peDecode	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_MATRIX2OF5_DECODING location to receive the decoding for Matrix 2 of 5 symbology.
pdwLength	[out]	Pointer to the DWORD location to receive a value for the bar code length.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

See Also

IS9CConfig::SetMatrix2of5

This function updates the Matrix 2 of 5 settings with new values.

Syntax

HRESULT IS9CConfig::SetMatrix2of5(ITC_MATRIX2OF5_DECODING
eDecode, DWORD dwLength);

Parameters

eDecode [in] Identifies the decoding for Matrix 2 of 5 symbology.

dwLength [in] Identifies the bar code length.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

See Also

None.

Matrix 2 of 5 Default Settings

Parameter	Default	Valid Range	•
Decoding	Not Active	ITC_MATRI	X2OF5_DECODING
Bar Code Length	Minimum Length = 6	0x00`0xFE	ITC_BC_LENGTH_NO_CHANGE

Matrix 2 of 5 Enumerations

typedef enum tagMatrix2of5Decoding
{
 ITC_MATRIX2OF5_NOTACTIVE = 0, // Default
 ITC_MATRIX2OF5_ACTIVE = 1,
 ITC_MATRIX2OF5_NO_CHANGE = 255
 ITC_MATRIX2OF5_DECODING;
 #define ITC_BC_LENGTH_NO_CHANGE 255. This definition can be used when the bar
 code length does not require any change.

IS9CConfig::GetMSI

This function retrieves the current MSI settings.

Syntax

HRESULT IS9CConfig::GetMSI(ITC_MSI_DECODING* peDecode, ITC MSI CHECK DIGIT* peCheck, DWORD* pdwLength);

Parameters

peDecode	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_MSI_DECODING location to receive the decoding for MSI symbology.
peCheck	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_MSI_CHECK_DIGIT location to receive the check digit.
pdwLength	[out]	Pointer to the DWORD location to receive the bar code length.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

See Also

None.

IS9CConfig::SetMSI

This function updates the MSI settings with new values.

Syntax

HRESULT IS9CConfig::SetMSI(ITC_MSI_DECODING eDecode, ITC_MSI_CHECK_DIGIT eCheck, DWORD dwLength);

Parameters

eDecode	[in]	Identifies the decoding for MSI symbology.
eCheck	[in]	Identifies the check digit.
dwLength	[in]	Identifies the bar code length.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

See Also

None.

MSI Default Settings

Parameter	Default	Valid Range
Decoding	Not Active	ITC_MSI_DECODING
Check Digit	MOD 10 checked and transmitted	ITC_MSI_CHECK_DIGIT
Bar Code Length	Minimum Length = 6	0x00`0xFE ITC_BC_LENGTH_NO_CHANGE

MSI Enumerations

```
typedef enum tagMsiDecoding
{
ITC_MSI_NOTACTIVE = 0, // Default
ITC_MSI_ACTIVE = 1,
ITC_MSI_OCHANGE = 255
} ITC_MSI_DECODING;
typedef enum tagMsiCheckDigit
{
ITC_MSI_CHECK_MOD10_XMIT, // Default
ITC_MSI_CHECK_MOD10_NOTXMIT,
ITC_MSI_CHECK_DOUBLEMOD10_XMIT,
ITC_MSI_CHECK_DOUBLEMOD10_NOTXMIT,
ITC_MSI_CHECK_DOUBLEMOD10_NOTXMIT,
ITC_MSI_CHECK_DIGIT;
#define ITC_BC_LENGTH_NO_CHANGE 255. This definition can be used when the bar
code length does not require any change.
```

IS9CConfig::GetPDF417

This function retrieves the current PDF417 settings.

Syntax

HRESULT IS9CConfig::GetPDF417 (ITC_PDF417_DECODING* pePdf417Decode, ITC_PDF417_MACRO_PDF* peMacroPdf, ITC_PDF417_CTRL_HEADER* pePdfControlHeader, ITC_PDF417_FILE_NAME* pePdfFileName, ITC_PDF417_SEGMENT_COUNT* pePdfSegmentCount, ITC_PDF417_TIME_STAMP* pePdfTimeStamp, ITC_PDF417_SENDER* pePdfSender, ITC_PDF417_ADDRESSEE* pePdfAddressee, ITC_PDF417_FILE_SIZE* pePdfFileSize, ITC_PDF417_CHECKSUM* pePdfChecksum);

Parameters

pePdf417Decode	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_PDF417_DECODING location to receive the decoding for PDF417 symbology.
peMacroPdf	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_PDF417_MACRO_PDF location to receive the Macro PDF.
pePdfControlHeader	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_PDF417_CTRL_HEADER location to receive the control header.
pePdfFileName	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_PDF417_FILE_NAME location to receive the file name.
pePdfSegmentCount	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_PDF417_SEGMENT_COUNT location to receive the segment count.
pePdfTimeStamp	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_PDF417_TIME_STAMP location to receive the time stamp.

700 Series Color Mobile Computer User's Manual

pePdfSender	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_PDF417_SENDER location to receive the sender.
pePdfAddressee	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_PDF417_ADDRESSEE location to receive the addressee.
pePdfFileSize	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_PDF417_FILE_SIZE location to receive the file size.
pePdfChecksum	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_PDF417_CHECKSUM location to receive the checksum.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

See Also

None.

IS9CConfig::SetPDF417

This function updates the PDF417 settings with new values.

Syntax

```
HRESULT IS9CConfig::SetPDF417 ( ITC_PDF417_DECODING

ePdf417Decode, ITC_PDF417_MACRO_PDF_eMacroPdf,

ITC_PDF417_CTRL_HEADER ePdfControlHeader,

ITC_PDF417_FILE_NAME ePdfFileName, ITC_PDF417_SEGMENT_COUNT

ePdfSegmentCount, ITC_PDF417_TIME_STAMP_ePdfTimeStamp,

ITC_PDF417_SENDER ePdfSender, ITC_PDF417_ADDRESSEE

ePdfAddressee, ITC_PDF417_FILE_SIZE_ePdfFileSize,

ITC_PDF417_CHECKSUM_ePdfChecksum);
```

Parameters

ePdf417Decode	[in]	Identifies the decoding for PDF417 symbology.
eMacroPdf	[in]	Identifies the Macro PDF.
ePdfControlHeader	[in]	Identifies the control header.
ePdfFileName	[in]	Identifies the file name.
ePdfSegmentCount	[in]	Identifies the segment count.
ePdfTimeStamp	[in]	Identifies the time stamp.
ePdfSender	[in]	Identifies the sender.
ePdfAddressee	[in]	Identifies the addressee.
ePdfFileSize	[in]	Identifies the file size.
ePdfChecksum	[in]	Identifies the checksum.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

See Also None.

PDF 417 Default Settings

Parameter	Default	Valid Range
Decoding	Not Active	ITC_PDF417_DECODING
Macro PDF	Macro PDF Buffered	ITC_PDF417_MACRO_PDF
Control Header	Not Transmitted	ITC_PDF417_CTRL_HEADER
*File Name	Not Transmitted	ITC_PDF417_FILE_NAME
*Segment Count	Not Transmitted	ITC_PDF417_SEGMENT_COUNT
*Time Stamp	Not Transmitted	ITC_PDF417_TIME_STAMP
*Sender	Not Transmitted	ITC_PDF417_SENDER
*Address	Not Transmitted	ITC_PDF417_ADDRESSEE
*File Size	Not Transmitted	ITC_PDF417_FILE_SIZE
*Check Sum	Not Transmitted	ITC_PDF417_CHECKSUM
* These are Macro PDF Op	otional Fields.	

PDF 417 Enumerations

```
typedef enum tagPdf417Decoding
{
ITC PDF417 NOTACTIVE = 0,
ITC PDF417 ACTIVE = 1,
                                    // Default
ITC PDF417 NO CHANGE = 255
} ITC PDF417 DECODING;
typedef enum tagPdf417MacroPdf
ITC PDF417 MACRO UNBUFFERED = 0,
ITC PDF417 MACRO BUFFERED = 1,
                                    // Default
ITC PDF417 MACRO NO CHANGE = 255
} ITC PDF417 MACRO PDF;
typedef enum tagPdf417ControlHeader
ITC PDF417 CTRL HEADER NOTXMIT = 0,
                                       // Default
ITC PDF417 CTRL HEADER XMIT = 1,
ITC PDF417 CTRL HEADER NO CHANGE = 255
} ITC PDF417 CTRL HEADER;
typedef enum tagPdf417FileName
ITC PDF417 FILE NAME NOTXMIT = 0, // Default
ITC PDF417 FILE NAME XMIT = 1,
ITC PDF417 FILE NAME NO CHANGE = 255
} ITC_PDF417_FILE_NAME;
typedef enum tagPdf417SegmentCount
{
ITC PDF417 SEGMENT COUNT NOTXMIT = 0, // Default
ITC PDF417 SEGMENT COUNT XMIT = 1,
```

```
ITC PDF417 SEGMENT COUNT NO CHANGE = 255
} ITC PDF417 SEGMENT COUNT;
typedef enum tagPdf417TimeStamp
ITC_PDF417_TIME_STAMP_NOTXMIT = 0, // Default
ITC_PDF417_TIME_STAMP_XMIT = 1,
ITC_PDF417_TIME_STAMP_NO_CHANGE = 255
} ITC_PDF417_TIME_STAMP;
typedef enum tagPdf417Sender
{
ITC PDF417 SENDER NOTXMIT = 0, // Default
ITC PDF417 SENDER XMIT = 1,
ITC PDF417 SENDER NO CHANGE = 255
} ITC_PDF417_SENDER;
typedef enum tagPdf417Addressee
                                    // Default
ITC PDF417 ADDRESSEE NOTXMIT = 0,
ITC_PDF417_ADDRESSEE_XMIT = 1,
ITC_PDF417_ADDRESSEE_NO_CHANGE = 255
} ITC_PDF417_ADDRESSEE;
typedef enum tagPdf417FileSize
ITC PDF417 FILE SIZE NOTXMIT = 0, // Default
ITC PDF417 FILE SIZE XMIT = 1,
ITC PDF417 FILE SIZE NO CHANGE = 255
} ITC PDF417 FILE SIZE;
typedef enum tagPdf417Checksum
{
ITC PDF417 CHECKSUM NOTXMIT = 0,
                                   // Default
ITC PDF417 CHECKSUM XMIT = 1,
ITC PDF417 CHECKSUM NO CHANGE = 255
} ITC_PDF417_CHECKSUM;
```

IS9CConfig::GetPlessey

This function retrieves the current Plessey settings.

Syntax

```
HRESULT IS9CConfig::GetPlessey( ITC_PLESSEY_DECODING*
peDecode, ITC_PLESSEY_CHECK_DIGIT* peCheck, DWORD* pdwLength
);
```

Parameters

peDecode	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_PLESSEY_DECODING location to receive the decoding for Plessey symbology.
peCheck	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_PLESSEY_CHECK_DIGIT location to receive the check digit.
pdwLength	[out]	Pointer to the DWORD location to receive the bar code length.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

See Also

None.

IS9CConfig::SetPlessey

This function updates the Plessey settings with new values.

Syntax

```
HRESULT IS9CConfig::SetPlessey( ITC_PLESSEY_DECODING
eDecode, ITC PLESSEY CHECK DIGIT eCheck, DWORD dwLength );
```

Parameters

eDecode	[in]	Identifies the decoding for Plessey symbology.
eCheck	[in]	Identifies the check digit.
dwLength	[in]	Identifies the bar code length.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

See Also

Plessey Default Settings

Parameter	Default	Valid Range
Decoding	Not Active	ITC_PLESSEY_DECODING
Check Digit	Not Transmitted	ITC_PLESSEY_CHECK_DIGIT
Bar Code Length	Any Bar Code Length	0x00`0xFE ITC_BC_LENGTH_NO_CHANGE

Plessey Enumerations

IS9CConfig::GetStandard2of5

This function retrieves the current Standard 2 of 5 settings.

Syntax

```
HRESULT IS9CConfig::GetStandard2of5(
ITC_STANDARD2OF5_DECODING* peDecode,
ITC_STANDARD2OF5_FORMAT* peFormat,
ITC_STANDARD2OF5_CHECK_DIGIT* peCheck,
ITC_BARCODE_LENGTH_ID* peLengthId, BYTE rgbLengthBuff,
DWORD* pdwNumBytes );
```

Parameters

peDecode	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_STANDARD2OF5_DECODING location to receive the decoding for Standard 2 of 5 symbology.
peFormat	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_STANDARD2OF5_FORMAT location to receive the format.
peCheck	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_STANDARD2OF5_CHECK_DIGIT location to receive Modulo 10 check digit.
peLengthId	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_BARCODE_LENGTH_ID location to receive an indicator of either ITC_BARCODE_LENGTH or ITC_BARCODE_FIXED_LENGTH.
rgbLengthBuff	[out,size	e_is(3)] An array of bytes to receives 1 byte of data for ITC_BARCODE_LENGTH, or 3 bytes of data for ITC_BARCODE_FIXED_LENGTH.
pdwNumBytes	[out]	Pointer to the DWORD location to receive a number indicating number of bytes in <i>rbgLengthBuff[]</i> : 1 byte for ITC_BARCODE_LENGTH or 3 bytes for ITC_BARCODE_FIXED_LENGTH.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

See Also

IS9CConfig::SetStandard2of5

This function updates the Standard 2 of 5 settings with new values.

Syntax

HRESULT IS9CConfig::SetStandard2of5(

```
ITC_STANDARD2OF5_DECODING eDecode, ITC_STANDARD2OF5_FORMAT
eFormat, ITC_STANDARD2OF5_CHECK_DIGIT eCheck,
ITC_BARCODE_LENGTH_ID eLengthId, BYTE rgbLengthBuff[], DWORD
dwNumBytes );
```

Parameters

eDecode	[in]	Identifies the decoding for Standard 2 of 5 symbology.
eFormat	[in]	Identifies the format.
eCheck	[in]	Identifies the Modulo 10 check digit.
eLengthId	[in]	Use ITC_BARCODE_LENGTH_NO_CHANGE to indicate no change for bar code length. Use ITC_BARCODE_LENGTH for any length and minimum length, and set rgbLengthBuff[0] to a valid length value. Use ITC_BARCODE_FIXED_LENGTH to compose 1 or 2 or 3 fixed lengths, and set 3 bytes: rgbLengthBuff[0], rgbLengthBuff[1], rgbLengthBuff[2] with valid values.
rgbLengthBuff	[in,si	ze_is(dwNumBytes)] An array of bytes containing bar code lengths when <i>eLengthId</i> = ITC_BARCODE_LENGTH or ITC_BARCODE_FIXED_LENGTH.
dwNumBytes	[in]	Number of bytes in <i>rbgLengthBuff</i>]. For S9C, this value is 1 when <i>eLengthId</i> = ITC_BARCODE_LENGTH or 3 when <i>eLengthId</i> = ITC_BARCODE_FIXED_LENGTH.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

See Also

Standard 2 of 5 Default Settings

Parameter	Default	Valid Range
Decoding	Not Active	ITC_STANDARD2OF5_DECODING
Format	Identicon (6 Start/Stop bars)	ITC_STANDARD2OF5_FORMAT
Check Digit	Not Used	ITC_STANDARD2OF5_CHECK_DIGIT
Bar Code Length	Minimum Length = 6	0x00-0xFE ITC_BC_LENGTH_NO_CHANGE

Standard 2 of 5 Enumerations

```
typedef enum tagStandard2of5Decoding
£
ITC STANDARD2OF5 NOTACTIVE = 0, // Default
ITC STANDARD2OF5 ACTIVE = 1,
ITC STANDARD20F5 NO CHANGE = 255
} ITC STANDARD20F5 DECODING;
typedef enum tagStandard2of5Format
{
ITC STANDARD2OF5 FORMAT IDENTICON, // Default
ITC_STANDARD2OF5_FORMAT_COMPUTER_IDENTICS,
ITC STANDARD2OF5 FORMAT NO CHANGE = 255
} ITC STANDARD20F5 FORMAT;
typedef enum tagStandard2of5CheckDigit
{
ITC STANDARD2OF5 CHECK NOTUSED, // Default
ITC STANDARD20F5 CHECK XMIT,
ITC STANDARD20F5 CHECK NOTXMIT,
ITC STANDARD20F5 CHECK NO CHANGE = 255
} ITC STANDARD2OF5 CHECK DIGIT;
typedef enum tagBarcodeLengthId
{
ITC BARCODE LENGTH = 0,
ITC_BARCODE_FIXED_LENGTH,
ITC BARCODE LENGTH NO CHANGE = 255
} ITC BARCODE LENGTH ID;
```

IS9CConfig::GetTelepen

This function retrieves the current Telepen settings.

Syntax

HRESULT IS9CConfig::GetTelepen(ITC_TELEPEN_DECODING*
 peDecode, ITC_TELEPEN_FORMAT* peFormat);

Parameters

peDecode	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_TELEPEN_DECODING location to receive the decoding for TELEPEN symbology.
peFormat	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_TELEPEN_FORMAT location to receive the format.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

See Also

None.

IS9CConfig::SetTelepen

This function updates the Telepen settings with new values.

Syntax

HRESULT IS9CConfig::SetTelepen(ITC_TELEPEN_DECODING* eDecode, ITC TELEPEN FORMAT* eFormat);

Parameters

eDecode [in] Identifies the decoding for Telepen symbology.

eFormat [in] Identifies the format.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

See Also

None.

Telepen Default Settings

Parameter	Default	Valid Range
Decoding	Not Active	ITC_TELEPEN_DECODING
Format	ASCII	ITC_TELEPEN_FORMAT

Telepen Enumerations

```
typedef enum tagTelepenDecoding
{
ITC_TELEPEN_NOTACTIVE = 0, // Default
ITC_TELEPEN_ACTIVE = 1,
ITC_TELEPEN_NO_CHANGE = 255
} ITC_TELEPEN_DECODING;
typedef enum tagTelepenDecoding
{
ITC_TELEPEN_FORMAT_ASCII, // Default
ITC_TELEPEN_FORMAT_NUMERIC,
ITC_TELEPEN_FORMAT_NO_CHANGE = 255
} ITC_TELEPEN_FORMAT;
```

IS9CConfig::GetUpcEan

This function retrieves the current UPC/EAN settings.

Syntax

HRESULT IS9CConfig::GetUpcEan(ITC_UPCEAN_DECODING* upceanDecode, ITC_UPCA_SELECT* upcASelect, ITC_UPCE_SELECT* upcESelect, ITC_EAN8_SELECT* ean8Select, ITC_EAN13_SELECT* ean13Select, ITC_UPCEAN_ADDON_DIGITS* upcAddOnDigits, ITC_UPCEAN_ADDON_TWO* upcAddOn2, ITC_UPCEAN_ADDON_FIVE* upcAddOn5, ITC_UPCA_CHECK_DIGIT* upcACheck, ITC_UPCE_CHECK_DIGIT* upcECheck, ITC_EAN8_CHECK_DIGIT* ean8Check, ITC_EAN13_CHECK_DIGIT* ean13Check, ITC_UPCA_NUMBER_SYSTEM* upcANumSystem, ITC_UPCE_NUMBER_SYSTEM* upcENumSystem, ITC_UPCA_REENCODE* upcAReencode, ITC_UPCE_REENCODE* upcEReencode, ITC_EAN8_REENCODE* ean8Reencode);

Parameters

rarameters		
upceanDecode	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_UPCEAN_DECODING location to receive the decoding for UPC/EAN symbology.
upcASelect	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_UPCA_SELECT location to receive the UPC-A selection state.
upcESelect	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_UPCE_SELECT location to receive the UPC-E selection state.
ean8Select	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_EAN8_SELECT location to receive the EAN-8 selection state.
ean13Select	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_EAN13_SELECT location to receive the EAN-13 selection state.
upcAddOnDigits	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_UPCEAN_ADDON_DIGITS location to receive the add-on digits.
upcAddOn2	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_UPCEAN_ADDON_TWO location to receive the add-on 2 digits.
upcAddOn5	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_UPCEAN_ADDON_FIVE location to receive the add-on 5 digits.

upcACheck	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_UPCA_CHECK_DIGIT location to receive the UPC-A check digit.
upcECheck	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_UPCE_CHECK_DIGIT location to receive the UPC-E check digit.
ean8Check	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_EAN8_CHECK_DIGIT location to receive the EAN-8 check digit.
ean13Check	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_EAN13_CHECK_DIGIT location to receive the EAN-13 check digit.
upcANumSystem	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_UPCA_NUMBER_SYSTEM location to receive the UPC-A number system.
upcENumSystem	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_UPCE_NUMBER_SYSTEM location to receive the UPC-E number system.
upcAReencode	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_UPCA_REENCODE location to receive the UPC-A reencoding.
upcEReencode	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_UPCE_REENCODE location to receive the UPC-E reencoding.
ean8Reencode	[out]	Pointer to the ITC_EAN8_REENCODE location to receive the EAN-8 reencoding.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

See Also

IS9CConfig::SetUpcEan

This function updates the UPC/EAN settings with new values.

Syntax

HRESULT **IS9CConfig::SetUpcEan(** ITC_UPCEAN_DECODING upceanDecode, ITC_UPCA_SELECT_upcASelect, ITC_UPCE_SELECT upcESelect, ITC_EAN8_SELECT_ean8Select, ITC_EAN13_SELECT ean13Select, ITC_UPCEAN_ADDON_DIGITS_upcAddonDigits, ITC_UPCEAN_ADDON_TWO_upcAddon2, ITC_UPCEAN_ADDON_FIVE upcAddon5, ITC_UPCA_CHECK_DIGIT_upcACheck, ITC_UPCE_CHECK_DIGIT_upcECheck, ITC_EAN8_CHECK_DIGIT ean8Check, ITC_EAN13_CHECK_DIGIT_ean13Check, ITC_UPCA_NUMBER_SYSTEM_upcANumSystem, ITC_UPCE_NUMBER_SYSTEM upcENumSystem, ITC_UPCA_REENCODE_upcAReencode, ITC_UPCE_REENCODE_upcEReencode, ITC_EAN8_REENCODE ean8Reencode);

Parameters

upceanDecode	[in]	Identifies the decoding for UPC/EAN symbology.
upcASelect	[in]	Identifies the UPC-A selection state.
upcESelect	[in]	Identifies the UPC-E selection state.
ean8Select	[in]	Identifies the EAN-8 selection state.
ean13Select	[in]	Identifies the EAN-13 selection state.
upcAddOnDigits	[in]	Identifies the Add-on digits.
upcAddOn2	[in]	Identifies the Add-on 2 digits.
upcAddOn5	[in]	Identifies the Add-on 5 digits.
upcACheck	[in]	Identifies the UPC-A check digit.
upcECheck	[in]	Identifies the UPC-E check digit.
ean8Check	[in]	Identifies the EAN-8 check digit.
ean13Check	[in]	Identifies the EAN-13 check digit.
upcANumSystem	[in]	Identifies the UPC-A number system.
upcENumSystem	[in]	Identifies the UPC-E number system.
upcAReencode	[in]	Identifies the UPC-A reencoding.
upcEReencode	[in]	Identifies the UPC-E reencoding.
ean8Reencode	[in]	Identifies the EAN-8 reencoding.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

See Also

Parameter	Default	Valid Range
Decoding	ITC_UPCEAN_NO_CHANGE	This parameter is no longer used, set it to this value.
UPC-A	Active	ITC_UPCA_SELECT
UPC-E	Active	ITC_UPCE_SELECT
EAN-8	Active	ITC_EAN8_SELECT
EAN-13	Active	ITC_EAN13_SELECT
Add On Digits	Not Required	ITC_UPCEAN_ADDON_DIGITS
Add On 2 Digits	Not Active	ITC_UPCEAN_ADDON_TWO
Add On 5 Digits	Not Active	ITC_UPCEAN_ADDON_FIVE
UPC-A Check Digit	Transmitted	ITC_UPCA_CHECK_DIGIT
UPC-E Check Digit	Transmitted	ITC_UPCE_CHECK_DIGIT
EAN-8 Check Digit	Transmitted	ITC_EAN8_CHECK_DIGIT
EAN-13 Check Digit	Transmitted	ITC_EAN13_CHECK_DIGIT
UPC-A Number System	Transmitted	ITC_UPCA_NUMBER_SYSTEM
UPC-E Number System	Transmitted	ITC_UPCE_NUMBER_SYSTEM
Reencode UPC-A	UPC-A transmitted as EAN-13	ITC_UPCA_REENCODE
Reencode UPC-E	UPC-E transmitted as UPC-E	ITC_UPCE_REENCODE
Reencode EAN-8	EAN-8 transmitted as EAN-8	ITC_EAN8_REENCODE

UPC/EAN Default Settings

UPC/EAN Enumerations

UPC/EAN EIIUIIIEIA	liulis
typedef enum tagUpcEanDecoding {	
ITC UPCEAN NOTACTIVE = 0 ,	
ITC UPCEAN ACTIVE = 1,	// Default
ITC UPCEAN NO CHANGE = 255	
} ITC UPCEAN DECODING;	
typedef enum tagUpcASelect	
{	
ITC UPCA DEACTIVATE,	
ITC UPCA ACTIVATE,	// Default
ITC UPCA NO CHANGE = 255	
} ITC UPCA SELECT;	
typedef enum tagUpcESelect	
{	
ITC UPCE DEACTIVATE,	
ITC UPCE ACTIVATE,	// Default
ITC UPCE NO CHANGE = 255	
} ITC UPCE SELECT;	
typedef enum tagEan8Select	
{	
ITC EAN8 DEACTIVATE,	
ITC EANS ACTIVATE,	// Default
ITC EAN8 NO CHANGE = 255	
} ITC EAN8 SELECT;	
typedef enum tagEan13Select	
{	
ITC EAN13 DEACTIVATE,	

ITC EAN13 ACTIVATE, // Default ITC EAN13 NO CHANGE = 255 } ITC EAN13 SELECT; typedef enum tagUpcEanAddonDigits ITC_UPCEAN_ADDON_NOT_REQUIRED, // Default ITC UPCEAN ADDON REQUIRED, ITC_UPCEAN_ADDON_NO_CHANGE = 255 } ITC UPCEAN ADDON DIGITS; typedef enum tagUpcEanAddonTwo ITC UPCEAN ADDON TWO NOTACTIVE = 0, // Default ITC UPCEAN ADDON TWO ACTIVE = 1, ITC UPCEAN ADDON TWO NO CHANGE = 255 } ITC UPCEAN ADDON TWO; typedef enum tagUpcEanAddonFive // Default ITC UPCEAN ADDON FIVE NOTACTIVE = 0, ITC UPCEAN ADDON FIVE ACTIVE = 1, ITC_UPCEAN_ADDON_FIVE_NO_CHANGE = 255 } ITC_UPCEAN_ADDON_FIVE; typedef enum tagUpcACheckDigit ITC UPCA CHECK NOTXMIT = 0, // Default ITC UPCA CHECK XMIT = 1, ITC UPCA CHECK NO CHANGE = 255 } ITC UPCA CHECK DIGIT; typedef enum tagUpcECheckDigit ITC UPCE CHECK NOTXMIT = 0, ITC UPCE CHECK XMIT = 1, // Default ITC UPCE CHECK NO CHANGE = 255 } ITC UPCE CHECK DIGIT; typedef enum tagEan8CheckDigit { ITC EAN8 CHECK NOTXMIT = 0, // Default ITC EAN8 CHECK XMIT = 1, ITC_EAN8_CHECK NO CHANGE = 255} ITC EAN8 CHECK DIGIT; typedef enum tagEan13CheckDigit ITC EAN13 CHECK NOTXMIT = 0, ITC EAN13 CHECK XMIT = 1, // Default ITC EAN13 CHECK NO CHANGE = 255 } ITC EAN13 CHECK DIGIT; typedef enum tagUpcANumberSystem ITC UPCA NUM SYS NOTXMIT = 0, ITC UPCA NUM SYS XMIT = 1, // Default ITC UPCA NUM SYS NO CHANGE = 255 } ITC UPCA NUMBER SYSTEM; typedef enum tagUpcENumberSystem ITC UPCE NUM SYS NOTXMIT = 0, ITC UPCE NUM SYS XMIT = 1, // Default ITC UPCE NUM SYS NO CHANGE = 255 } ITC UPCE NUMBER SYSTEM; typedef enum tagUpcAReencode {

ITC UPCA XMIT AS EAN13, // Default ITC_UPCA_XMIT_AS_UPCA, ITC_UPCA_XMIT_NO_CHANGE = 255 } ITC UPCA REENCODE; typedef enum tagUpcEReencode { // Default ITC_UPCE_XMIT_AS_UPCE, ITC_UPCE_XMIT_AS_UPCA, ITC_UPCE_XMIT_NO_CHANGE = 255 } ITC UPCE REENCODE; typedef enum tagEan8Reencode { ITC EAN8 XMIT AS_EAN8, //Default ITC EAN8 XMIT AS EAN13, ITC_EAN8_XMIT_NO_CHANGE = 255 } ITC_EAN8_REENCODE;

IS9CConfig2 Functions

This interface is derived from the IS9CConfig interface and provides additional methods that can be used to set and retrieve the 700 Series Computer's bar code configuration. All supported symbologies are initialized to their defaults when the S9C firmware is loaded.

GET/SET functions use enumerations as their parameters. In most enumerations, there is an enumerator xx_NO_CHANGE (such as ITC_CODE39_NO_CHANGE), where xx refers to a particular enumeration. This enumerator can be used during a call to a SET to indicate that no change is to be made to that particular parameter. This prevents the called function from having to format the same S9C command and send it down to the scanner.

To specify a bar code length of "any length," use a value of "0" for the bar code length argument.

IS9CConfig2 functions are the following. IS9CCONFIG.H is the header file and ITCUUID.LIB contains the IID_IADC Interface GUID value used to obtain the interface.

- IS9CConfig2::GetCode11 (page 205)
- IS9CConfig2::SetCode11 (page 205)
- IS9CConfig2::GetCustomSymIds (page 207)
- IS9CConfig2::SetCustomSymIds (page 208)
- IS9CConfig2::GetGlobalAmble (page 211)
- IS9CConfig2::SetGlobalAmble (page 212)
- IS9CConfig2::GetPDF417Ext (page 213)
- IS9CConfig2::SetPDF417Ext (page 213)
- IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit (page 214)
- IS9CConfig2::SetSymIdXmit (page 214)

IS9CConfig2::GetCode11

This function retrieves the current settings for Code 11.

Syntax

```
,
HRESULT GetCodel1( ITC_CODE11_DECODING* peDecode,
ITC_CODE11_CHECK_DIGIT* peCheck,
ITC_CODE11_CHECK_VERIFICATION* peVer );
```

Parameters

peDecode	[out]	Pointer to ITC_CODE11_DECODING location to receive Code 11 decoding.
peCheck	[out]	Pointer to ITC_CODE11_CHECK_DIGIT location to receive the check digit option.
peVer	[out]	Pointer to ITC_CODE11_CHECK_VERIFICATION location to receive the check verification option.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

See Also

None.

IS9CConfig2::SetCode11

This function updates the current setting of Code 11 symbology.

Syntax

```
HRESULT SetCode11( ITC_CODE11_DECODING eDecode,
ITC_CODE11_CHECK_DIGIT eCheck, ITC_CODE11_CHECK_VERIFICATION
eVer );
```

Parameters

eDecode	[in]	An enumeration that identifies decoding option for Code 11.
eCheck	[in]	An enumeration that identifies the check digit option.
e Ver	[in]	An enumeration that identifies check verification option.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

See Also

Code 11 Default Settings

Parameter	Default	Valid Range
Decoding	Not Active	ITC_CODE11_DECODING
Check Verification	1 Digit	ITC_CODE11_CHECK_VERIFICATION
Check Digit	Enable	ITC_CODE11_CHECK_DIGIT

Code 11 Enumerations

```
typedef enum tagCode11Decoding
{
ITC CODE11 NOTACTIVE = 0,
ITC CODE11 ACTIVE = 1, // Default
ITC CODE11 NO CHANGE = 255
} ITC CODE11 DECODING;
typedef enum tagCodel1CheckVerification
ITC_CODE11_CHK_VERIFY_ONEDIGIT = 1,
ITC_CODE11_CHK_VERIFY_TWODIGIT = 2, // Default
ITC_CODE11_CHK_VERIFY_NO_CHANGE = 255
} ITC CODE11 CHECK VERIFICATION;
typedef enum tagCode11CheckDigit
{
ITC CODE11 CHECK NOTXMIT = 0, // Default
ITC CODE11 CHECK XMIT = 1,
ITC CODE11 CHECK NO CHANGE = 255
} ITC_CODE11_CHECK_DIGIT;
```

IS9CConfig2::GetCustomSymIds

This function retrieves all the custom symbology identifiers defined for the currently supported symbologies. *This is not supported when using an imager on the 700 Series Computer.*

Syntax

```
HRESULT GetCustomSymIds( ITC_CUST_SYM_ID_PAIR*
pStructSymIdPair,DWORD dwMaxNumElement, DWORD* pdwNumElement
);
```

Parameters

runneters		
pStructSymIdPair	[out]	Pointer to ITC_CUST_SYM_ID_PAIR location to receive the current defined symbology identifiers for the supported symbologies. The caller must preallocate this buffer with <i>dwMaxNumElement</i> elements.
dwMaxNumElement	[in]	Maximum number of elements allocated for the <i>pStructSymIdPair</i> buffer which should always be equal to the last defined enumeration constant + 1 of the enumeration ITC_CUSTOM_ID. In this case, it is ITC_CUSTOMID_LAST_ELEMENT.
pdwNumElement	[out]	Pointer to DWORD location to receive the actual number of elements returned in the <i>pStructSymIdPair</i> buffer, which should be the same as <i>dwMaxNumElement</i> .

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

See Also

- Custom Identifier Assignments (page 209)
- Custom Identifier Example (page 210)
- Custom Identifier Default Settings (page 210)

IS9CConfig2::SetCustomSymIds

This function updates the symbology identifiers (any ASCII values) for the currently supported symbologies. *This is not supported when using an imager on the 700 Series Computer.*

Syntax

```
HRESULT SetCustomSymIds( ITC_CUST_SYM_ID_PAIR*
pStructSymIdPair, DWORD dwNumElement );
```

Parameters

pStructSymIdPair	[in]	Pointer to ITC_CUST_SYM_ID_PAIR location, containing the new symbology identifiers for any supported symbologies to update.
dwNumElement	[in]	Identifies the number of symbology identifiers to update in the <i>pStructSymIdPair</i> buffer.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

See Also

Custom Identifier Assignments

Each custom identifier is a one byte ASCII value within the range from 0x00 to 0xff. The enumerations in the ITC_CUSTOM_ID enumerator can be used as symbology identifications in the GetCustomSymIds() and SetCustomSymIds() functions.

```
typedef enum tagCustomId
{
    ITC_CUSTOMID_CODABAR = 0    Identifies the Codabar symbology
    ITC_CUSTOMID_CODE39         Identifies the Code 39 symbology
    ITC_CUSTOMID_CODE128_EAN_128    Identifies the Code 128 symbology
    ITC_CUSTOMID_CODE128_EAN_128    Identifies the EAN-8 symbology
    ITC_CUSTOMID_EAN13         Identifies the EAN-13 symbology
    ITC_CUSTOMID_I2OF5         Identifies the Matrix 2 of 5 symbology
    ITC_CUSTOMID_PATRIX2OF5        Identifies the Matrix 2 of 5 symbology
    ITC_CUSTOMID_PATRIX2OF5        Identifies the Matrix 2 of 5 symbology
    ITC_CUSTOMID_PATRIX2OF5        Identifies the PDF 417 symbology
    ITC_CUSTOMID_PDF417        Identifies the PDF 417 symbology
    ITC_CUSTOMID_PDF417        Identifies the Plessey symbology
    ITC_CUSTOMID_TELEPEN        Identifies the Telepen symbology
    ITC_CUSTOMID_UPCA        Identifies the UPC-A symbology
    ITC_CUSTOMID_UPCA        Identifies the UPC-E symbology
    ITC_CUSTOMID_UPCE        Identifies the last element. Use to preallocate
    the buffer on GetCustomSymIds
    ITC_CUSTOM_ID_PS;
    Identifies the symbology of interest
EYTE byteId;
    ASCII value (1 byte within the range0x00 - 0xf)
    }ITC_CUST_SYM_ID_PAIR;
```

Symbology	Default	Valid Range
Codabar	D	0x00-0xFF
Code 11	*	0x00-0xFF
Code 39	*	0x00-0xFF
Code 93	D	0x00-0xFF
Code128/EAN 128	D	0x00-0xFF
EAN-8	0xFF	0x00-0xFF
EAN-13	F	0x00-0xFF
Interleaved 2 of 5	Ι	0x00-0xFF
Matrix 2 of 5	D	0x00-0xFF
MSI	D	0x00-0xFF
PDF 417	*	0x00-0xFF
Plessey	D	0x00-0xFF
Standard 2 of 5	D	0x00-0xFF
Telepen	*	0x00-0xFF
UPC-A	А	0x00-0xFF
UPC-E	E	0x00-0xFF

Custom Identifier Example

The following code segment is an example of updating the UPC-E and UPC-A symbology identifiers with new values, and then retrieving the currently defined symbology identifiers for all the supported symbologies:

IS9CConfig2::GetGlobalAmble

This retrieves the scanner's current preamble or postamble setting.

Syntax

HRESULT **GetGlobalAmble(** ITC_GLOBAL_AMBLE_ID *eAmbleId*, BYTE rgbBuffer[], DWORD dwBufferSize, DWORD* pdwBufferSize);

Parameters

eAmbleId	[in]	An enumeration of type ITC_GLOBAL_AMBLE_ID identifies whether the preamble or postamble setting is to be retrieved. Only one setting can be queried at a time.
rgbBuffer	[in]	Contains the buffer for the postamble or preamble setting to be queried.
dwBufferSize	[in]	The maximum number of bytes that rgbBuffer can store. Must be at least ITC_GLOBAL_AMBLE_MAX_CHARS bytes.
pdwBufferSize	[out]	A pointer to DWORD location to store the actual number of returned bytes in <i>rgbBuffer</i> .

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

See Also

IS9CConfig2::SetGlobalAmble

This function updates the scanner's current preamble or postamble setting depending on the input parameters.

Syntax

```
HRESULT SetGlobalAmble( ITC_GLOBAL_AMBLE_ID eAmbleId, BYTE
rgbBuffer[], DWORD dwBufferSize );
```

Parameters

eAmbleId	[in]	An enumeration of type ITC_GLOBAL_AMBLE_ID identifies whether the preamble or postamble setting is to be updated. Only one setting can be updated at a time.
rgbBuffer	[in]	Contains the buffer for the postamble or preamble setting to be updated.
dwBufferSize	[in]	Identifies number of bytes in rgbBuffer.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

See Also

None.

Postamble and Preamble Defaults

Parameter	Default	Valid Range
Preamble	Null	0 to 20 ASCII characters
Postamble	Null	0 to 20 ASCII characters

IS9CConfig2::GetPDF417Ext

This function is an extended function for retrieving the PDF 417 settings not included in the IS9CConfig::GetPDF417.

Syntax

HRESULT GetPDF417Ext(ITC_MICRO_PDF417_DECODING* peDecode, ITC_MICRO_PDF417_CODE128_EMULATION* peCode128);

Parameters

peDecode	[out]	Pointer to ITC_MICRO_PDF417_DECODING location to receive the Micro PDF 417 decoding.
peCode128		Pointer to _MICRO_PDF417_CODE128_EMULATION* location to receive the Micro PDF 417 Code 128 emulation option.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

See Also

None.

IS9CConfig2::SetPDF417Ext

This function is an extended function for updating the additional PDF 417 settings not included in IS9CConfig::SetPDF417.

Syntax

```
HRESULT SetPDF417Ext( ITC_MICRO_PDF417_DECODING eDecode,
ITC MICRO PDF417 CODE128 EMULATION eCode128 );
```

Parameters

eDecode	[in]	An enumeration that identifies decoding option for the Micro PDF 417.
eCode128	[in]	An enumeration that identifies the Code 128 emulation

eCode128 [in] An enumeration that identifies the Code 128 emulation option for the Micro PDF 417.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

See Also

PDF 417 Extended: Micro PDF 417 Default Settings

Parameter	Default	Valid Range
Decoding	Not Active	ITC_MICRO_PDF417_DECODING
Code 128 Emulation	Not Active	ITC_MICRO_PDF417_CODE128_EMULATION
* These are Micro PDF 417 parameters.		

IS9CConfig2::GetSymIdXmit

This function retrieves the current symbology ID transmission option as described on the next page.

Syntax

HRESULT GetSymIdXmit(ITC SYMBOLOGY ID XMIT* peSymIdXmit);

Parameters

peSymIdXmit [out]

Pointer to ITC_SYMBOLOGY_ID_XMIT location to receive the current symbology identifier transmission option.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

See Also

None.

IS9CConfig2::SetSymIdXmit

This updates the symbology ID transmission option shown next page.

Syntax

HRESULT SetSymIdXmit(ITC SYMBOLOGY ID XMIT eSymIdXmit);

Parameters

eSymIdXmit

[in] Identifies the symbology identifier transmission option to update.

Return Values

HRESULT that indicates success or failure.

Remarks

None.

See Also

Symbology ID Transmission Option

The symbology identifier (or code mark) concept provides a standardized way for a device receiving data from a bar code reader to differentiate between the symbologies.

The following symbology ID transmission option specifies whether or not the symbology ID should be transmitted as part of the scanned bar code label to all the connected data collection applications. Options for transmission are: do not transmit, transmit the standard AIM identifiers, or transmit the one byte custom defined identifiers. AIM and custom identifiers cannot be selected to be transmitted at the same time; only the last selected option will be active.

typedef enum tagSymbology	IdXmit
{	
ITC_ID_XMIT_DISABLE = 0	Symbology identifier will not be transmitted as part of the label. This is the default setting.
ITC_ID_XMIT_CUSTOM = 1	Activate custom symbology identifier transmission for all symbologies. Example of the transmitted label: [preamble] [Custom ID] <data> [postamble]</data>
ITC_ID_XMIT_AIM = 2	Activate AIM symbology identifier transmission for all symbologies. Example of the transmitted label: [preamble] [AIM symbology ID] <data> [postamble]</data>

}ITC_SYMBOLOGY_ID_XMIT;

IS9CConfig3 Functions

The IS9CConfig3 interface provides generic methods for retrieving and setting configuration using ISCP commands.

ISCP Commands

An ISCP Command is composed of three or more bytes formatted as <SG><FID><parameters> where:

- *SG* Setup group.
- *FID* Function ID.
- *parameters* One or more configuration value bytes depending on the configuration.

ISCP commands include the following:

Imager Settings

This dictates the start and end column positions for the image dimension.

<u>SG</u>	<u>FID</u>	<u>Parameter</u>	<u>Description</u>
0x7B	80	Value [0639]	Start column position.
0x7B	81	Value [0639]	End column position.

Trigger Settings

This sets the duration of the aiming beam before acquiring images to be decoded.

<u>SG</u>	FID	<u>Parameter</u>	<u>Description</u>
0x70	81	Value [065535]	Number of milliseconds.

QRCode Symbology

This enables or disables the QRCode symbology.

<u>SG</u>	FID	<u>Parameter</u>	<u>Description</u>
0x55	40	0	Disable this symbology.
0x55	40	1	Enable this symbology.

Data Matrix Symbology

This enables or disables the Data Matrix symbology.

<u>SG</u>	FID	Parameter	<u>Description</u>
0x54	40	0	Disable this symbology.
0x54	40	1	Enable this symbology.

ISCP::GetConfig

This retrieves configurations using the ISCP commands format.

Syntax

HRESULT ISCPGetConfig(BYTE rgbCommandBuff[], DWORD dwCommandBuffSize, BYTE rgbReplyBuff[], DWORD dwReplyBuffMaxSize, DWORD *pdwReplyBuffSize);

Parameters

rgbCommandBuff	[in, size_is]	Contains ISCP commands in array of bytes.
dwCommandBuffSize	[in]	Number of bytes in rgbCommandBuff.
rgbReplyBuff	[in, out, size_is]	Results of query in array of bytes.
dwReplyBuffMaxSize	[in]	Maximum size of rgdReplyBuff.
pdwReplyBuffSize	[in, out]	Number of bytes placed in <i>rbfReplyBuff.</i>

Return Values None.

Remarks None.

See Also None.

ISCP::SetConfig

This updates configurations using the ISCP commands format.

Syntax

HRESULT ISCPSetConfig(BYTE rgbCommandBuff[], DWORD dwCommandBuffSize, BYTE rgbReplyBuff[], DWORD dwReplyBuffMaxSize, DWORD *pdwReplyBuffSize);

Parameters

rgbCommandBuff	[in, size_is]	Contains ISCP commands in array of bytes.
dwCommandBuffSize	[in]	Number of bytes in rgbCommandBuff.
rgbReplyBuff	[in, out, size_is]	Results of request in array of bytes.
dwReplyBuffMaxSize	[in]	Maximum size of rgbReplyBuff.
pdwReplyBuffSize	[in, out]	Number of bytes placed in rgbReplyBuff.

Return Values None.

Remarks None.

See Also None.

AIM Symbology ID Defaults

Refer to the official AIM documentation on symbology identifiers for full information on the different processing options supported.

Symbology	ID Character	Modifier Characters
Codabar	F	 Standard Codabar symbol. No special processing. ABC Codabar (American Blood commission) concatenate/message append performed. Reader has validated the check character. Reader has stripped the check character before transmission.
Code 11	Н	 Single modulo 11 check character validated and transmitted. Two modulo 11 check characters validated and transmitted. Check characters validated but not transmitted.
Code 39	Α	 No check character validation nor full ASCII processing. All data transmitted as decoded. Modulo 43 check character validated and transmitted. Modulo 43 check character validated but not transmitted. Full ASCII character conversion performed. No check character validation. Full ASCII character conversion performed. Modulo 43 check character validated and transmitted. Full ASCII character conversion performed. Modulo 43 check character validated and transmitted. Full ASCII character conversion performed. Modulo 43 check character validated but not transmitted.
Code 93	G	0 No options specified. Always transmit 0.
Code128	С	 Standard data packet. No FNC1 in first or second symbol character position after start character. EAN/UCC-128 data packet. FNC1 in first symbol character position after start character. FNC1 in second symbol character position after start character. Concatenation according to International Society for Blood Transfusion specifications was performed. Concatenated data follows.
Interleaved 2 of 5	Ι	 No check character validation. Modulo 10 symbol check character validated and transmitted Modulo 10 symbol check character validated but not transmitted.
Matrix 2 of 5	Х	0 `F For symbologies or symbology options not listed, a code character with the value 0-F may be assigned by the decoder manufacturer to identify those symbologies and options implemented in the reader.
MSI	М	 Modulo 10 symbol check character validated and transmitted. Modulo 10 symbol check character validated but not transmitted.

Chapter 6 — Scanner Support

Symbology (continued)	ID Character	Modifier Characters	
PDF 417/ Micro PDF 417	L	 Reader set to conform with protocol defined in 1994 PDF 417 specifications. Reader set to follow protocol of ENV 12925 for Extended Channel Interpretation (all data characters 92 doubled). Reader set to follow protocol of ENV 12925 for Basic Channel Interpretation (data characters 92 are not doubled). Code 128 emulation: implied FNC1 in first position. Code 128 emulation: implied FNC1 after initial letter or pair of digits. Code 128 emulation: no implied FNC1. 	
Plessey	Р	0 No options specified. Always transmit 0.	
Standard 2 of 5 (2-bar start/stop)	R	 No check character validation. Modulo 7 check character validated and transmitted. Modulo 7 check character validated but not transmitted. 	
Standard 2 of 5 (3-bar start/stop)	S	0 No options specified. Always transmit 0.	
Telepen	В	 Full ASCII mode Double density numeric only mode Double density numeric followed by full ASCII Full ASCII followed by double density numeric 	
UPC/EAN	Ε	 Consider UPC/EAN symbols with supplements as two separate symbols. The first symbol is the main data packet, and the second symbol is the 2 or 5 digit supplement. Transmit these two symbols separately, each with its own symbology identifier. Provision is made for the option of transmitting both symbols as a single data packet. 0 Standard data packet in full EAN format (13 digits for EAN-13, UPC-A, and UPC-E; does not include add-on data). 1 Two digit add-on data only. 2 Five digit add-on data only. 3 Combined data packet comprising 13 digits from EAN-13, UPC-A, or UPC-E symbol and 2 or 5 digits from add-on symbol. 4 EAN-8 data packet 	
IMPORTANT: The "symbol	ogy_id" character	letter must be uppercase for the above definitions.	

IImage Interface

The IImage interface gives the application the capability to acquire images. The image acquired can be either a raw image as captured by the digital camera or it can be normalized. A normalized image is presented the same as if the picture were taken at right angles to the image and at the same distance. The normalized image is commonly used for signature capture applications.

- IImage::ReadSigCapBuffer (page 221)
- IImage::ReadSigCapFile (page 224)
- IImage::ReadImage (page 225)
- IImage::CancelReadImage (page 226)
- IImage::Start (page 226)
- IImage::Stop (page 227)
- IImage::Open (page 227)
- IImage::Close (page 228)

IImage::ReadSigCapBuffer

Syntax

```
HRESULT IImage::ReadSigCapBuffer( ITC_SIGCAP_SPEC
*pSigCapSpec, ITC_IMAGE_SPEC *pImgBuffer, DWORD nMaxBuffSize
);
```

Parameters Parameters: *pSigCapSpec*

[in] Pointer to the structure that identifies the signature capture region. This structure is defined as follows:

 dwStructSize 	Size, in bytes, of this struct. This is for version control.
• iAspectRatio	Ratio of the bar code height (linear bar codes) or row height (2D bar codes) to the narrow element width.
• iOffsetX	Offset in X direction, relative to barcode center. Positive values are right of the bar code, negative values to the left.

• iOffsetY	Offset in Y direction, relative to barcode center. Positive values are higher than the bar code, negative values lower.
• uiWidth	Width of signature capture image region in intelligent bar code units.
• uiHeight	Height of the signature capture image region in intelligent bar code units.

• *iResolution* Number of pixels per intelligent bar code unit.

// TIFF Binary file

// TIFF Gray Scale

// Raw image

// JPEG image

// Returns data a KIM file

```
• eFormat
```

Ο,

1,

2,

3,

4, 5,

```
ITC_FILE_KIM =
ITC_FILE_TIFF_BIN =
ITC_FILE_TIFF_BIN_GROUP4 =
ITC_FILE_TIFF_GRAY_SCALE =
ITC_FILE_RAW =
ITC_FILE_JPEG =
```

```
• eDepth
```

Number of bits per pixel. Currently, only one (monochrome) or eight (gray-scale) are supported.

Format of the image buffer returned as follows. Currently, only ITC_FILE_RAW is supported.

// TIFF Binary Group 4 compressed

pImgBuffer [out]

```
Pointer to the buffer in which the signature capture image will be put.
```

```
typedef struct tagITCImageSpec {
    DWORD dwStructSize;
    LONG biWidth;
    LONG biHeight;
    WORD biBitCount;
```

```
ITC_FILE_FORMAT eFormat;
DWORD biActualImageSize;
DWORD biMaxImageBytes;
BYTE rgbImageData[1];
```

} ITC_IMAGE_SPEC;

where:

- *dwStructSize* Size, in bytes, of this struct. This is for version control. *biWidth* The width of each row in pixels.
- *biHeight* The number of rows in the image data.
- *biBitCount* The number of bits per pixel.
- *eFormat* Identifies the image format.
 - *biActualImageSize* Total bytes of image data returned.
 - *biMaxImageBytes* Maximum bytes that can be stored in *rgbImageData[]*.
- *rgbImageData* Buffer containing the actual data, for example a 640x480 uses a 307200-byte buffer. The array size of this buffer is arbitrary so do *not* use this structure directly to reserve memory. The actual dimension of the buffer is identified by *biMaxImageBytes*.

Return Values

HRESULT identifying success or error. On error, the following codes will be returned:

- S_OK Image successfully returned.
- ITC_RESULT_ERR_BADREGION_E The specified region is not in the image.
- ITC_RESULT_NO_BC_DECODED_E A bar code has not yet been decoded or the last bar code decoded was not a signature capture symbology.
- ITC_IMGBUFF_TOO_SMALL_E *pImgBuffer* is too small to contain the signature captured image.
- ITC_INV_PARAMETER_E One of the parameters is invalid.
- **S_DEVICE_NOT_OPENED_E** The device had not been opened.

Remarks

ReadSigCapBuffer() will return the image from the last decoded label with dimensions identified by the calling parameter. This signature capture region must include the signature capture bar code. The supported bar codes for signature capture are: PDF 417, Code 128, and Code 39. The caller specifies the width, height, and center of the image to be retrieved. This image is independent of any rotation of the bar code relative to the imager. Thus, if the bar code is decoded with the code itself upside down to the imager, the retrieved image will still be right side up. However, if the specified image is outside the field of view a result code of ITC_RESULT_ERR_BADREGION_E will be returned.

This function uses the dimensions of the last decoded bar code as its coordinate system. Thus, all the parameters describing the image size and position are in units called "Intelligent Bar Code Units." An Intelligent Bar Code Unit is equivalent to the narrow element width of the bar code.

The dimensions of the resulting image can be calculated with this formula:

```
Resulting Width = Specified Width * Specified Resolution
Resulting Height = Specified Height * Specified Resolution
```

See Also

Ilmage::ReadSigCapFile



Note: This has not been implemented as of this publication.

Syntax

```
HRESULT IImage::ReadSigCapFile( ITC_SIGCAP_SPEC
*pSigCapSpec, LPCTSTR pszFileName );
```

Parameters

pSigCapSpec	[in]	Pointer to the structure that identifies the signature
		capture region. See ReadSigCapFile (page 221) for
		a description of this structure.

pszFileName [in] Name of the file in which to copy the image.

Return Values

HRESULT identifying success or error. On error, the following codes will be returned:

- S_OK Image successfully returned.
- ITC_RESULT_ERR_BADREGION_E The specified region is not in the image.
- ITC_RESULT_NO_BC_DECODED_E A bar code has not yet been decoded or the last bar code decoded was not a signature capture symbology.
- ITC_FILE_OPEN_E The file could not be opened.
- ITC_INV_PARAMETER_E One of the parameters is invalid.
- **S_DEVICE_NOT_OPENED_E** The device had not been opened.

Remarks

ReadSigCapFile() will write the image from the last decoded label with dimensions identified by the calling parameter. If the file already exists, its contents will be overwritten.

This signature capture region must include the signature capture bar code. The supported bar codes for signature capture are: PDF 417, Code 128, and Code 39. The caller specifies the width, height, and center of the image to be retrieved. This image is independent of any rotation of the bar code relative to the imager. Thus, if the bar code is decoded with the code itself upside down to the imager, the retrieved image will still be right side up. However, if the specified image is outside the field of view a result code of ITC_RESULT_ERR_BADREGION_E will be returned.

This function uses the dimensions of the last decoded bar code as its coordinate system. Thus, all the parameters describing the image size and position are in units called "Intelligent Bar Code Units". An Intelligent Bar Code Unit is equivalent to the narrow element width of the bar code. The dimensions of the resulting image can be calculated with this formula:

Resulting Width = Specified Width * Specified Resolution Resulting Height = Specified Height * Specified Resolution

See Also

None.

IImage::ReadImage

Syntax

```
HRESULT IImage::Read( ITCFileFormat eFormat, DWORD nDepth,
ITC IMAGE SPEC *pImgBuffer, DWORD dwTimeout );
```

Parameters

eFormat		[in]	Format of the image buffer returned as follows. Currently, only ITC_FILE_RAW is supported.
<pre>ITC_FILE_KIM = ITC_FILE_TIFF_BIN = ITC_FILE_TIFF_BIN_GROUP4 = ITC_FILE_TIFF_GRAY_SCALE = ITC_FILE_RAW = ITC_FILE_JPEG =</pre>	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5,	 	Returns data a KIM file TIFF Binary file TIFF Binary Group 4 compressed TIFF Gray Scale Raw image JPEG image
nDepth		[in]	Number of bits per pixel. Currently, only eight (gray-scale) are supported.

pImgBuffer [in/out] Pointer to the buffer containing the image.

dwTimeout [in] Milliseconds to wait for the image to be returned.

Return Values

HRESULT identifying success or error. On error, these will be returned:

• S_OK	Image successfully returned.
• ITC_IMGBUFF_TOO_SMALL_E	<i>pImgBuffer</i> is too small to contain the signature captured image.
• ITC_TIMEOUT_E	Timeout.
• ITC_INV_PARAMETER_E	One of the parameters is invalid.
• S_DEVICE_NOT_OPENED_E	The device had not been opened.

Remarks

The image is returned in *pImgBuffer* in the caller specified format.

See Also

IImage::CancelReadImage

Syntax

HRESULT IImage::CancelReadImage();

Parameters

None.

Return Values

Status code indicating success or failure as follows:

• S_OK

Imager closed.

• S_DEVICE_NOT_OPENED_E The device had not been opened.

Remarks

This function causes a pending image read of IImage::ReadImage() to return immediately with an error status. The purpose of this function is to allow the application to release a thread blocked on the ReadImage() call.

See Also

None.

Ilmage::Start

Syntax

HRESULT IImage::Start();

Parameters

None.

Return Values

Status code indicating success or failure as follows:

• S_OK

Imager started.

• S_DEVICE_NOT_OPENED_E The device had not been opened.

Remarks

This function starts the image continuously capturing images.

See Also

Ilmage::Stop

Syntax

HRESULT **IImage::Stop();**

Parameters

None.

Return Values

Status code indicating success or failure as follows:

• S_OK

Imager started.

- S_IMG_NOT_PRESENT_E Unit does not contain an imager.
 - **S_DEVICE_NOT_OPENED_E** Device had not been opened.

Remarks

This function stops the image continuously capturing images.

See Also

None.

Ilmage::0pen

Syntax

HRESULT IImage:: Open (BOOL fSigCapEnable);

Parameters *fSigCapEnable*

[in] When TRUE, signature capture is enabled. When FALSE, it is disabled. Bar code labels are decoded and images (via IImage::ReadImage) the same.

Return Values

Status code indicating success or failure as follows:

- S_OK Imager opened.
 S_IMG_NOT_PRESENT_E Unit does not contain an imager.
- S_DEVICE_CONTENTION_E Device has already been opened.

Remarks

This function exclusively allocates the imager device so that the other IImage methods can be safely called.

See Also

IImage::Close

Syntax

HRESULT IImage::Close();

Parameters

None.

Return Values

Status code indicating success or failure as follows:

• S_OK

Imager closed.

• **S_DEVICE_NOT_OPENED_E** The device had not been opened.

Remarks

This function releases the imager device so that other applications can open it. An IImage::Release() will also close the imager device.

See Also

Data Collection Configuration



Scanner settings for the 700 Series Computer can be configured via the **Data Collection** control panel applet. From the 700 Series Computer, tap **Start** \rightarrow **Settings** \rightarrow the **System** tab \rightarrow the **Data Collection** icon. See *Appendix A*, "*Control Panel Applets*" for more information about the following parameters. Note that these are in alphabetical order.

- Codabar (page 292)
- Code 11 (page 306)
- Code 128 (*page 295*)
 - Code 128 Options (page 296)
 - Code 128 FNC1 Character (page 297)
- Code 39 (page 290)
- Code 93 (page 294)
 - Code 93 Length (page 294)
- Data Matrix (page 308)
- Interleaved 2 of 5 (page 303)
- Matrix 2 of 5 (page 304)
- MSI (page 299)
- PDF 417 (page 300)
 - Macro PDF (page 300)
 - Micro PDF 417 (page 302)
- Plessey (page 298)
- QR Code (*page 307*)
- Standard 2 of 5 (page 291)
- Telepen (page 305)
- UPC/EAN (page 293)

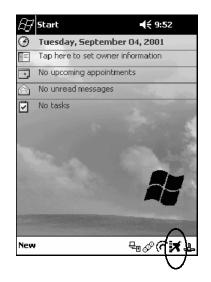
Tethered Scanner

The Intermec Tethered Scanner feature accepts data from the COM1 port wedges it to the keyboard interface, and allows some ADC. This feature can be enabled or disabled from the Today Screen on the 700 Series Computer.

Enabling and Disabling



On the 700 Series Computer, tap Start \rightarrow Today. Tap the bar code scanner icon in the System Tray *(circled in the following illustration)*. Initially, the bar code scanner icon indicates that this feature is disabled *(shown to the left)*.





• Select **Comm Port Wedge** to send any data, coming into the 700 Series Computer through the COM1 port from an external input device, as keyboard data to an application on the desktop.

For example, if you have Pocket Word running on your 700 Series Computer desktop, information scanned with a scanner connected to the COM1 port will appear in the Word document. If another data collection application is running and is active on the 700 Series Computer, the scanned information will appear in that application.



Note: When Comm Port Wedge is selected, regardless of the data sent by the external input device, you cannot control the device or the data format using any of the Intermec scanner control or data transfer APIs from the SDK or the internal Data Collection software. The external input device is governed by what software it has onboard to tell it how to scan, take pictures, or send the data elsewhere.

- Select 1551/1553 to enable the Sabre 1551E or 1553 Tethered Scanner to scan, then send data as keyboard data. The 1551/1553 Tethered Scanner has software onboard that translates scanned data into characters, so the running/active application does not need to know how to do that. All the scanner control and data transfer APIs will work with the 1551/1553 Tethered Scanner, so you can control the device.
- Select **Disable All** to disable this feature and use the COM1 port for another application, such as ActiveSync. An error message will result if this option were not selected, but this action was attempted. Similarly, if ActiveSync is using the COM1 port, and you select **Comm Port Wedge** or **1551/1553**, an error message will result. See "*Error Message*" on page 232 for more information.

Comm Port Wedge
1551/1553
Disable All
Change Comm Settings

Changing Comm Settings

Tap **Change Comm Settings** to configure the settings for the COM1 port. Current settings are restored after a warm-boot, but are lost after a coldboot. When these settings have not been changed, the **OK** button is disabled (grayed out). When changes are made, tap **OK** after it is enabled to accept these changes.

- Baud Rate: 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600, 19200, 38400, 57600, 115200
- Data Bits: 7 or 8
- Parity: None, Odd, Even, Mark, Space
- **Stop Bits**: 1 or 2
- Flow Control: None or Hardware

Tethered Scanner

The default settings for the Tethered Scanner are shown in the following illustration:

Comm Port 1 Settings		
Baud Rate:	38400 🔻	
Data Bits	8 🔻	
Parity:	None 🔻	
Stop Bits:	1 -	
Flow Control:	None 🔻	

Sabre 1551E or 1553 Tethered Scanner

The default communication configuration for the Sabre 1551E or 1553 Tethered Scanner is shown in the following illustration. Scan the EasySet Reset Factory Defaults label to set the Sabre 1551E or 1553 tethered scanner communications settings to this configuration. The COM1 port configuration settings must also match those of the scanner to scan labels.

Comm Port 1 Settings		
Baud Rate:	9600 🔻	
Data Bits	7 🔻	
Parity:	Even 🔻	
Stop Bits:	2 🔻	
Flow Control:	None 🔻	

Welch Allyn 1470 Imager Settings

The Welch Allyn 1470 Imager can be set to this configuration by scanning the Factory Default Settings label.

Error Message

If the COM1 port is used by another application, such as ActiveSync, neither the Comm Port Wedge nor the 1551/1553 Tethered Scanner can be enabled. As a result, the following message may appear. *Note that this message is for the Comm Port Wedge.* You must disable that application to free up the COM1 port before you can enable either the wedge or the scanner.



Error enabled CommPortWedge: Comm port unavailable.

Scanner Cabling

A null modem cable is required for the Welch Allyn 1470 Imager to communicate with the 700 Series Computer when using the 700 Series Serial Cable (P/N: 226-999-001).

The Sabre 1551E / 1553 Cable connects directly to the Model 700 Comm Port.

Limitations and Capabilities

The Tethered Scanner has the following limitations:

- No auto detection of a scanner's physical connection to COM1 port. User needs to ensure the communication settings of COM1 port matched the settings of the device.
- The Pocket PC Pocket Office applications misbehave when control characters such as carriage return are wedged. This is a known Pocket PC problem, which is being worked with Microsoft and for which a work around is being developed.
- Communications port is COM1 and cannot be changed.
- A complete bar code label is detected when the time between bytes (the inter-byte gap) exceeds 100 ms. This allows that data could be concatenated if two labels were received while the Comm Port Wedge or the 1551/1553 Tethered Scanner was not performing a read. That is, it could be wedging data just read or the read thread could be preempted. Also, the labels could appear concatenated if the scanner itself were to buffer the labels before transmitting them.

When enabled, the Comm Port Wedge menu option has the following limitation:

• There is no bar code API to get bar code data from the bar code scanner. The Comm Port Wedge transmits the data through the keyboard interface only.

When enabled, the 1551/1553 menu option has the following capabilities:

- Grid Data Editing is available.
- The source of the symbology configurations is only available via the Easy Set command labels. Only the Virtual Wedge configurations can be configured via the Data Collection Control Panel Applet Virtual Wedge page. See Appendix A, "*Control Panel Applets*," for more information.
- May transmit the data through the keyboard interface (via the Virtual Wedge).

• The bar code APIs, defined in the IADC interface, are available to get bar code data from the bar code scanner. The following example shows how to programmatically collects bar code data:

```
#include "IADC.h"
                                        // Linked with ITCUUID.LIB
#include ``ITCAdcMgmt.h"
                                       // Linked with ITCAdcDevMgmt.lib
  IADC* pIADC;
  HRESULT hrStatus = S OK;
// Create a ADC COM interface to collect bar code data from the 1551E/1553
// when the 1551/1553 menu option is enabled.
  hrStatus =
  ITCDeviceOpen(TEXT("ExtScanner"), // Name of the ADC device.
    IID_IADC, // COM interface to return
ITC_DHDEVFLAG_READAHEAD, // Device's Flags
(LPVOID *) &pIADC); // the returned interface
if( SUCCEEDED(hrStatus) )
  {
    BYTE byteBuffer[MAX LABEL SIZE];
    DWORD dwLength = 0;
  HRESULT hr = pIDC -> Read(
    byteBuffer,
                                       // Buffer to put the ADC data.
    MAX LABEL SIZE,
                                       // Size of pDataBuffer in bytes.
    &dwLength,
                                       // Number bytes returned.
                                       // Time stamp of the received data. NULL.
    NULL,
    INFINITE
                                       // Number of milliseconds to wait.
  );
}
    when done using this COM interface, delete it:
ITCDeviceClose( (IUnknown **) pIADC);
```